TABLE OF CONTENTS

MEDICAL CHEMISTRY 1

CHAPTER 1	1
HISTORICAL INTRODUCTION	1
CHAPTER 2	3
WHAT IS CHEMISTRY?	3
MATTER IS TINY PARTICLES	3
TYPES OF PARTICLES	3
ELEMENTS	3
ATOMS	4
MOLECULES	4
REPRESENTATION OF ATOMS AND MOLECULES	5
IONS	6
CHAPTER 3	7
ELECTRICAL ATTRACTIONS AND REPULSIONS	7
CHAPTER 4	10
STRUCTURE OF ATOMS	10
ATOMIC NUMBER	11
ARRANGEMENT OF ELECTRONS [ELECTRONIC STRUCTURE]	11
EFFECT OF ELECTRONIC STRUCTURE ON PROPERTIES	12
PERIODIC TABLE OF THE ELEMENTS	12
ISOTOPES	13
MASS NUMBER	15
CHAPTER 5	16
BONDS BETWEEN ATOMS	16
FORMATION OF BONDS	16
IONIC BOND	16
COVALENT BOND	18
METALLIC BOND	19
HYDROGEN BOND	20
OXIDATION AND REDUCTION	20
CONFIGURATIONS OF ATOMS BONDED TOGETHER	21
BONDS DURING CHEMICAL CHANGES	22
CHAPTER 6	24
COUNTING ATOMS AND MOLECULES	24
ATOMIC WEIGHT OF AN ELEMENT	24
FORMULA WEIGHT OF A SUBSTANCE	24
CALCULATION OF FORMULA WEIGHTS	25
CONCENTRATION OF SOLUTIONS	27
SI UNITS (SYSTEME INTERNATIONAL D'UNITES)	28
CHAPTER 7	30
CHEMICAL EQUATIONS	30
METHOD FOR DETERMINING EQUATIONS	33
REVERSIBLE REACTIONS	34
CHAPTER 8	36
COMBUSTION RESPIRATION	36
OXYGEN IN THE HUMAN BODY	41
REMOVAL OF CARBON DIOXIDE FROM THE HUMAN BODY	45
PHOTOSYNTHESIS	47

CHAPTER 9 49
ELECTROCHEMISTRY 49
ENERGY CHANGES IN CHEMICAL REACTIONS 49
ELECTROCHEMISTRY 50
VOLTAIC CELLS 50
ELECTRICAL ENERGY FROM LIVING ORGANS 52
ELECTROCARDIOGRAM ECG 52
ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAM EEG 53
ELECTROLYTIC CELLS 54
ELECTROLYSIS OF SODIUM CHLORIDE 54
ELECTROLYSIS OF SODIUM CHLORIDE SOLUTION 56
COPPER ELECTROPLATING 57
CHAPTER 10 60
OXYGEN 60
ATOMIC STRUCTURE 60
DISCOVERY AND APPLICATIONS 61
OCCURRENCE 61
PREPARATION 62
OXYGEN FROM WATER 62
OXYGEN FROM AIR 64
PROPERTIES 64
OXIDATION OF BACTERIA 66
CHAPTER 11 68
HYDROGEN 68
ATOMIC STRUCTURE 68
ISOTOPES OF HYDROGEN 68
DEUTERIUM, D 69
TRITIUM, T 70
DISCOVERY 70
OCCURRENCE 70
PREPARATION 71
HYDROGEN FROM WATER 72
PROPERTIES 73
HYDROGEN IN THE BODY CHEMISTRY 74
CHAPTER 12 76
WATER 76
NATURAL WATER 76
SOFT AND HARD WATER 77
DRINKING WATER 79
DISTILLED WATER 79
STERILE WATER 80
PROPERTIES OF WATER 81
MEANING OF FORMULA H_2O 81
SHAPE OF A WATER MOLECULE 82
LINKING OF WATER MOLECULES 82
CHAPTER 13 85
SALTS, ACIDS, AND BASES 85
ACIDS 85
BASES 87
pH METER 88
BLOOD pH 89
NORMAL SALTS AND ACID SALTS 91
ELECTROLYTES 91
BLOOD ELECTROLYTES 93
TISSUE ELECTROLYTES 94

CHAPTER 14 95
OSMOSIS AND FILTRATION 95
OSMOSIS 95
OSMOTIC PRESSURE IN THE BODY 97
TONICITY 98
MEDICAL APPLICATIONS OF OSMOTIC PRESSURE 99
SALINE PURGATIVES 99
OSMOTIC DIURETICS 99
OSMOTIC POULTICE 100
FILTRATION 100
FILTRATION IN THE KIDNEY 101
ARTIFICIAL KIDNEY 104
CHAPTER 15 106
SODIUM and POTASSIUM 106
ATOMIC STRUCTURE 106
DISCOVERY 107
OCCURRENCE 108
PROPERTIES 109
REACTION WITH WATER 109
REACTION WITH ACIDS 110
SODIUM AND POTASSIUM IONS 110
SODIUM CHLORIDE, NACl 110
POTASSIUM CHLORIDE, KCl 112
SODIUM IODIDE, NaI 113
POTASSIUM IODIDE, KI 113
SODIUM BICARBONATE, $NAHCO_3$ 113
LITHIUM CARBONATE, Li_3CO_3 114
SODIUM HYDROXIDE, NaOH 114
POTASSIUM HYDROXIDE, KOH 114
SODIUM and POTASSIUM in the BODY 115
ESTIMATION of SODIUM and POTASSIUM in BLOOD 117
CHAPTER 16 118
CHLORINE and The HALOGEN GROUP 118
ATOMIC STRUCTURE 118
FLUORINE, F_2 120
HALOTHANE 121
CHLORINE, Cl_2 121
HYDROCHLORIC ACID HCl 122
SODIUM CHLORIDE, NACl 122
CHLORIDE IN THE HUMAN BODY 122
HYPOCHLOROUS ACID, HClO 123
SODIUM HYPOCHLORITE, NaClO 123
HLOROFORM, $CHCl_3$ 124
CARBON TETRACHLORIDE, CCl_4 125
BROMINE, B_{12} 125
IODINE, I_2 126
SODIUM IODIDE, NAL AND POTASSIUM IODIDE, KI 126
IODINE IN THE BODY 126
PROTEIN BOUND IODINE, PBI 128
THYROXINE T_4 128
T_3 TRI-IODOTHYRONINE UPTAKE 128
FREE THYROXINE INDEX 129
T_3 TRI-IODOTHYRONINE ESTIMATION 129
RADIO-IODINE 129

CHAPTER 17 131
MAGNESIUM and CALCIUM 131
ATOMIC STRUCTURE 131
ATOMIC ABSORPTION 133
MAGNESIUM 134
MEDICAL APPLICATIONS 134
MAGNESIUM IN THE BODY 135
CALCIUM 136
QUICK-LIME 137
SLAKED LIME 138
CALCIUM CARBONATE 138
CALCIUM CHLORIDE 138
PLASTER OF PARIS 139
CALCIUM AND THE HUMAN BODY 139
CHAPTER 18 142
NITROGEN and PHOSPHORUS 142
ATOMIC STRUCTURE 142
NITROGEN 144
NITROGEN CYCLE 145
NITROGEN IN THE BODY 147
PHOSPHORUS 147
MONO-, DI- and TRI-PHOSPHATES 147
PHOSPHORUS IN THE BODY 148
CHAPTER 19 150
IRON and RELATED METALS 150
ATOMIC STRUCTURE 150
PROPERTIES 151
HARDNESS 151
VALENCE 151
COLOR OF COMPOUNDS 151
CATALYTIC ACTIVITY 151
MANGANESE 152
POTASSIUM PERMANGANATE, KMNO4 153
IRON, Fe 153
IRON(II) SULFATE 154
IRON(II) CARBONATE, $FeCO_3$ 154
IRON(II) GLUCONATE 154
PARENTERAL IRON 155
IRON METABOLISM 155
HEMOGLOBIN 158
CARBOXYHEMOGLOBIN 158
COBALT 159
VITAMIN B_{12} 159
COPPER 161
COPPER(II) SULFATE, $CuSO_4 \cdot 5H_2O$ 162
BIOLOGICAL ASPECTS OF COPPER 162
ZINC 163
ZINC OXIDE, ZnO 163
ZINC SULFATE 163
ZINC CARBONATE, $ZnCO_3$ 164
ZINC IN THE BODY 164

CHAPTER 20 165
CARBON CHEMISTRY 165
ORGANIC CHEMISTRY 165
CARBON, C 166
VARIETY OF CARBON COMPOUNDS 167
STRUCTURE OF CARBON COMPOUNDS 167
SHORT CHAINS 167
BRANCHED CHAINS 169
MEDIUM-LENGTH CHAINS 169
FUSED RINGS 173
RINGS WITH CARBON AND OTHER ATOMS 173

CHAPTER 1

MEDICAL CHEMISTRY 1

HISTORICAL INTRODUCTION

Chemistry evolved out of man's need to make weapons, woman's desire for ornaments and their joint need of vessels, utensils, and embalming fluids.

By 2000 B.C. the ancient Egyptians and Sumerians had already discovered how to extract gold, copper, silver, lead, and iron from deposits. They could also fix dyes to clothing materials with mordants of metallic salts and make coats of many colors.

By the beginning of the Christian era chemistry had become a recognized branch of learning in the city of Alexandria where it was known as the divine art. An early name for Egypt was Chemia, and when the Arabs invaded Egypt they adopted its divine art as 'al chemia' or alchemy.

The alchemists of the middle ages were mainly occupied in attempting to transmute base materials into gold. Paracelsus (1493-1541), a rebel physician and alchemist, hotly criticized medical practice of his day and rounded a sect of medical chemists called Iatrochemists, who applied chemistry to the service of medicine. In particular, they tried to prepare the elixir of life, which would cure all diseases and also confer perpetual youth. Although unsuccessful in their main endeavors, they did incidentally discover many new substances such as alcohol, mineral acids and metallic salts.

Van Helmont (1577-1644) represents the transition from medieval alchemy to modern chemistry. Born of noble origin in Brussels, he qualified in medicine, married and then spent his life in careful chemical experimentation. He was the first to recognize clearly the production of gas in chemical processes.

He derived the name gas from the Greek word "chaos" to represent the wild motion of its particles. He discovered that when he corked up limestone and acid in a bottle to produce carbon dioxide, it burst the bottle. So he called it gas sylvester-the wild untameable gas of the woods. He also concluded, wrongly, that a gas could not be contained in a vessel.

Robert Boyle (1627-1691) has been called the father of modern chemistry. He set up a laboratory at the back of his sister's house in Pall Mall, London, where he developed chemistry as a science in its own

right and not just as a means of making gold or medicines. His chief contribution was the introduction of the scientific method, every theory being put to the test of carefully planned experiment.

Boyle developed the concept of chemical elements. He defined an element as a substance which cannot be split by any chemical means into simpler substances. The Greeks had originated the idea of elements almost 2000 years earlier, but believed them to be earth, water, air and fire. None of these is an element in the chemical sense. They can, however, be looked upon as a poetic representation of the three states of matter: solid (earth), liquid (water), and gas (air). Temperature (fire) is a major controlling factor; heat converts ice (solid) into water (liquid) and then into steam (gas).

Once the nature of chemical elements had been understood, the stage was set for the rapid advances in chemistry which took place during the next 300 years.

WHAT IS CHEMISTRY?

Chemistry is the study of substances, their properties and structures, and of the reactions by which they can be changed into other substances. By structure, we mean the arrangement of the minute particles of which a substance is composed.

MATTER IS TINY PARTICLES

Why do we believe that matter consists of tiny particles? We are all familiar with an important property common to all gases and vapors, the ability to spread or diffuse. Kitchen smells, unless we are careful, quickly pervade the whole house. The odor of disinfectant can be detected some distance from the place where it is used. If we think about it, the best explanation for this is that gases and vapors consist of tiny invisible particles that are constantly moving about in all directions.

Support for this idea is also given by the **diffusion** of liquids. If, for example, some bromine (a very dark red liquid) is placed under some water in a bottle we notice that after a day or two the bromine has spread evenly throughout the water giving it a uniform red color. We can explain this quite easily if we assume that the bromine and the water are made up of tiny particles which are continually moving about. Diffusion between solids is far less common than between liquids and gases. As a rule, the particles of a solid do not move about in all directions; they simply vibrate.

This theory of moving particles, which is supported by a great deal of other evidence, has proved extremely useful in explaining many properties of substances. It is one of the great theories of science and is known as the kinetic theory (Gr. kineo, I move).

TYPES OF PARTICLES

How many kinds of particles are there? Broadly speaking there are only three: atoms, molecules and ions. Before describing them we must first consider what is meant by elements.

ELEMENTS

These are different from all other substances in one very important respect: they cannot, apart from the radioactive elements, be broken

down into simpler substances. Water is not an element because if we pass an electric current through it we split it up into hydrogen and oxygen. Similarly, common salt (sodium chloride) is decomposed by electricity into sodium and chlorine. Water and sodium chloride are called compounds.

There are at present 104 known elements; 89 of them occur naturally and the rest are man-made. A list of them is given in the Appendix.

ATOMS

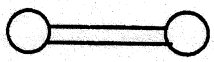
These are simply the smallest particles of an element. The Greek philosopher, Democritus, over 2000 years ago, originated the word **atom**, meaning a particle which could not be cut into any smaller pieces (Gr. a, not, +Gr. tomos, cut), but it was John Dalton from Lancashire, England, who first used the idea of atoms to explain chemical phenomena. His atomic theory, which he produced in 1807, is the cornerstone of modern chemistry. You might give a thought as to where Democritus got the idea about the atom.

Since Dalton's time, physicists have discovered that atoms are themselves built up of tiny particles of over thirty different kinds. However, only three need concern us. They are the proton, the neutron and the electron. We shall deal with them in Chapter 4.

MOLECULES

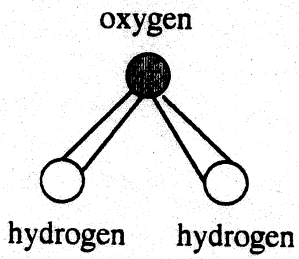
The atoms in many substances join together to form groups which we call **molecules**. Some molecules contain only two atoms; others, known as **giant molecules** or **macromolecules**, contain thousands of atoms. Chemists are able to determine by experiment and calculation not only the number but also the arrangement in space of the atoms in a molecule, in other words the shape of a molecule. The shapes of a few molecules are illustrated by the models pictured in Fig. 2.1.

a.



hydrogen hydrogen

b.



c.

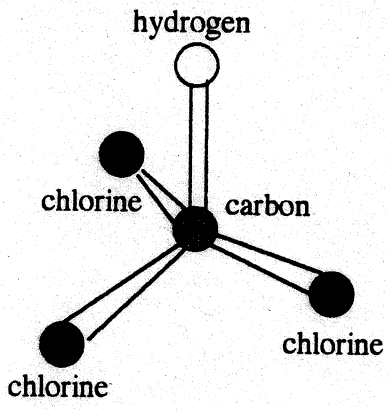


Fig. 2.1
Models of molecules (a) hydrogen H_2; (b) water H_2O; (c) chloroform $CHCl_3$.

The rods joining the spheres represent the chemical bonds which hold the atoms together. We shall find out later what a chemical bond actually is. The properties of a substance are largely determined by the bonds between its atoms and by the way the atoms are arranged.

REPRESENTATION OF ATOMS AND MOLECULES

Undoubtedly, the best way of representing molecules is by the use of models or pictures of models. However, we often do not need to show the shape of a molecule, only the numbers and types of atoms it contains. We can do this quite easily using the **molecular formula of the substance**. H_2O is the molecular formula of water. The symbol H represents one atom of hydrogen and the symbol O one atom of oxygen. The number in a formula always refers to the symbol preceding it; the formula H_2O tells us that a molecule of water consists of 2 hydrogen atoms and 1 oxygen atom. The molecular formula of oxygen is O_2.

This tells us that a molecule of oxygen contains 2 oxygen atoms. What does the molecular formula of glucose, $C_6H_{12}O_6$ tell you about the glucose molecule?

IONS

Atoms or groups of atoms which carry an electrical charge are called **ions**. Their nature will be described in the next chapter.

ELECTRICAL ATTRACTIONS AND REPULSIONS

EXPERIMENT 1

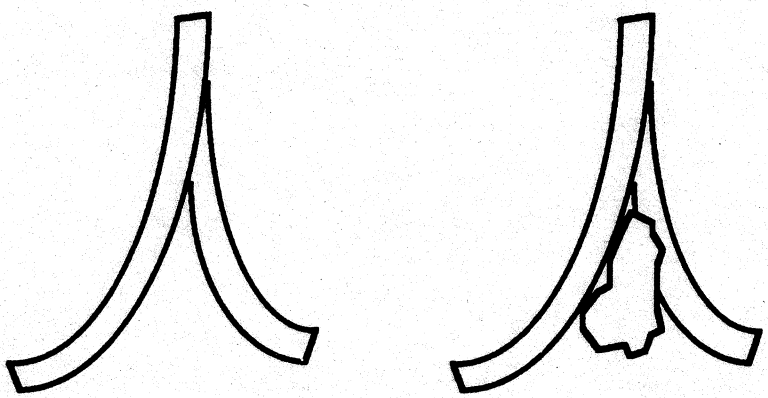
Rub a plastic pen with a piece of cloth; your sleeve will do nicely. You will find that the pen will attract certain materials, such as small bits of paper, a cotton thread, your hair, and more spectacularly, a fine jet of tap water. We do not know what causes these attractions, but this does not prevent us from giving them a name. We call them electrical attractions to distinguish them from magnetic and gravitational attractions which we are also unable to explain.

Now wipe the rubbed pen with your hand and see if it will still pick up bits of paper, etc. You will find that it will not.

When the pen is capable of electrical attractions we say that it is electrically charged or that it carries electrical charges. Wiping it with your hand discharges it.

EXPERIMENT 2

Figure 3.1
(a) Charged strips held together at one end;
(b) handkerchief placed between two strips.



a b

Cut two strips of polyethylene, each about 12 inches x 1 inch, from a polyethylene bag or sheet. Place them on a flat surface and electrically charge them by stroking them a few times with your handkerchief. Check that the polyethylene is charged by seeing if it will attract a small piece of paper.

Now hold the charged strips together at one end (see Fig. 3.1(a)) with the "stroked" surfaces facing each other. You will observe that the strips repel one another.

Still holding the two strips together, place the handkerchief between them as shown in Fig. 3.1(b). You will notice that the polythene is attracted to the handkerchief.

Now slowly withdraw the handkerchief starting from the junction of the strips, so that it gently brushes their inside surfaces. You will find that the strips no longer repel each other; they are no longer charged (more than one brushing may be necessary to destroy the repulsion completely).

As a result of Experiments 1 and 2, we can make the following deductions.

1. The charge on the handkerchief canceled out the charge on the polyethylene strips. There must therefore be two kinds of electrical charge which are "opposite." We can denote opposites by using the symbols + and -. We say that the charge on the rubbed polyethylene is negative, and that on the rubbed handkerchief is positive.

2. The two strips of polyethylene both carried a charge and they repelled each other. Therefore, negative charges repel one another. It can also be shown by experiment that positive charges repel one another. In general, we deduce that like charges repel.

3. The negatively charged polyethylene was attracted to the positively charged handkerchief. Therefore, opposite charges attract.

What has all this to do with chemistry? Quite a lot! You will remember in Chapter 2 we said that some substances were built up of particles called ions. We are now in a position to understand what an ion is. It is simply an electrically charged atom or group of atoms.

Sodium chloride consists of positive sodium ions and negative chlorine ions. We can see right away what holds the sodium and chlorine ions together in sodium chloride, it is the mutual attraction of a positive charge and a negative one. This attraction is called an ionic bond.

We shall see in Chapter 5 how particles acquire electrical charges.

Reference was also made in the last chapter to the three subatomic particles, the proton, the electron and the neutron, from which atoms are built. The proton is positively charged, the electron is negatively charged and the neutron is, as its name suggests, electrically neutral, that is, uncharged.

The building of atoms from these three fundamental particles is the subject of the next chapter.

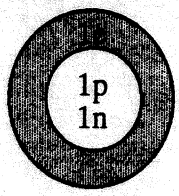
STRUCTURE OF ATOMS

In Chapter 2 we said that atoms were built up from smaller particles. Many of these are unstable but there are three stable particles which are fundamental in atomic structure. They are the **proton**, the **neutron** and the **electron.**

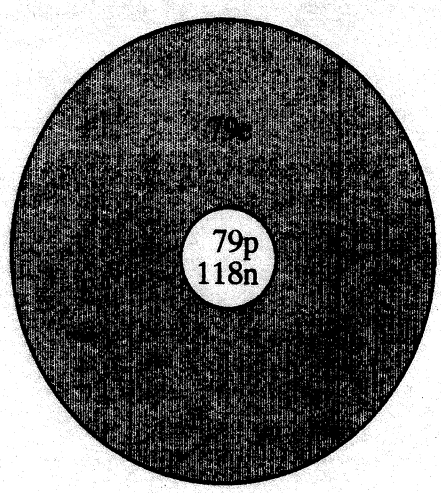
	SYMBOL	RELATIVE MASS	ELECTRICAL CHARGE
proton	p	1	+1
neutron	n	1	0
electron	e	1/1840	-1

ATOMIC STRUCTURE

An atom has a tiny central nucleus which contains the protons and neutrons. The term **nucleon** refers to a nuclear particle, whether it is a proton or a neutron. The rest of the atom is thinly populated by electrons which revolve around the nucleus. The number of electrons is equal to



deuterium atom



gold atom

Figure 4.1
Deuterium atom and gold atom. Representation of particle structure: e, electron; p, proton; n, neutron.

the number of protons so that the atom as a whole is electrically neutral. Atoms of deuterium and gold are shown diagrammatically in Fig. 4.1.

Because the mass of an electron is only about one two-thousandth of the mass of a nucleon, almost all the mass of an atom is concentrated in its nucleus.

Let us summarize: An atom consists of a relatively tiny and heavy, positively charged nucleus around which negatively charged electrons orbit.

ATOMIC NUMBER

This is the number of protons in the nucleus of an element and it is the **atomic number** that establishes the uniqueness of an element. Different elements have different atomic numbers.

ARRANGEMENT OF ELECTRONS [ELECTRONIC STRUCTURE]

As the distance from the nucleus increases, there are certain regions where electrons are most likely to be found. These regions are called **shells** or energy levels. The biggest atoms require seven shells to accommodate all their electrons. The shells are numbered 1 to 7 or lettered K to Q outwards from the nucleus. The smaller atoms, of course, require fewer shells. The following table gives the maximum number of electrons which each shell can hold.

SHELL	MAXIMUM NUMBER OF ELECTRONS = $2n^2$ (WHERE n IS SHELL NUMBER)
1 or K	2
2 or L	8
3 or M	18
4 or N	32
5 or O	50
6 or P	72
7 or Q	98

Scientists have not yet made atoms big enough to confirm the maximum number of electrons in the outer three shells. The numbers 50, 72 and 98 are predicted by theory. The electronic structure of gold Au may be represented as

Au 2, 8, 18, 32, 17, 2

which means that the K shell is completely filled with 2 electrons, the L with 8, the M with 18, the N with 32, while the O and P shells are

incompletely filled with 17 and 2 electrons respectively. Alternatively, the structure can be shown diagrammatically as in Fig. 4.2.

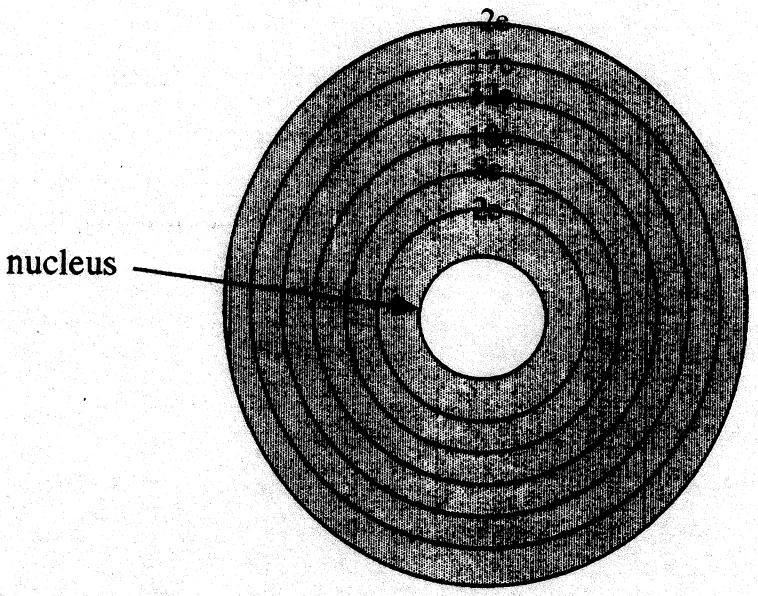


Figure 4.2
Gold atom, showing central nucleus surrounded by electron shells.

EFFECT OF ELECTRONIC STRUCTURE ON PROPERTIES

Similar elements have similar **electronic structures** meaning that they contain the same number of electrons in their outermost shells which are called the **valence shells**. Thus chlorine and bromine are similar because they have the electronic structures.

Cl 2, 8, 7 Br 2, 8, 18, 7

Very similar elements will have the same number of electrons in their last two shells. Sodium and potassium have the arrangements

Na 2,8,1 K 2,8,8,1

and so their properties are very alike.

PERIODIC TABLE OF THE ELEMENTS

If the elements are arranged in order of increasing atomic number, then at definite intervals, or periods, similar elements occur. In the first part of the table this occurs with every eighth element, in the middle part with every eighteenth and in the latter part with every thirty-second. The reason for this is that after these intervals the elements

have similar electronic structures, for example:

calcium, Ca with shell structure 2, 8, 8, 2 occurs eight elements after magnesium, Mg with shell structure 2, 8, 2;

arsenic, As with shell structure 2, 8, 18, 5 comes eighteen elements after phosphorus, P with shell structure 2, 8, 5;

lead, Pb with shell structure 2, 8, 18, 32, 18, 4 is thirty-two elements after tin, Sn with shell structure 2, 8, 18, 18, 4.

Similar elements are written underneath one another in the same group as shown in Table I.

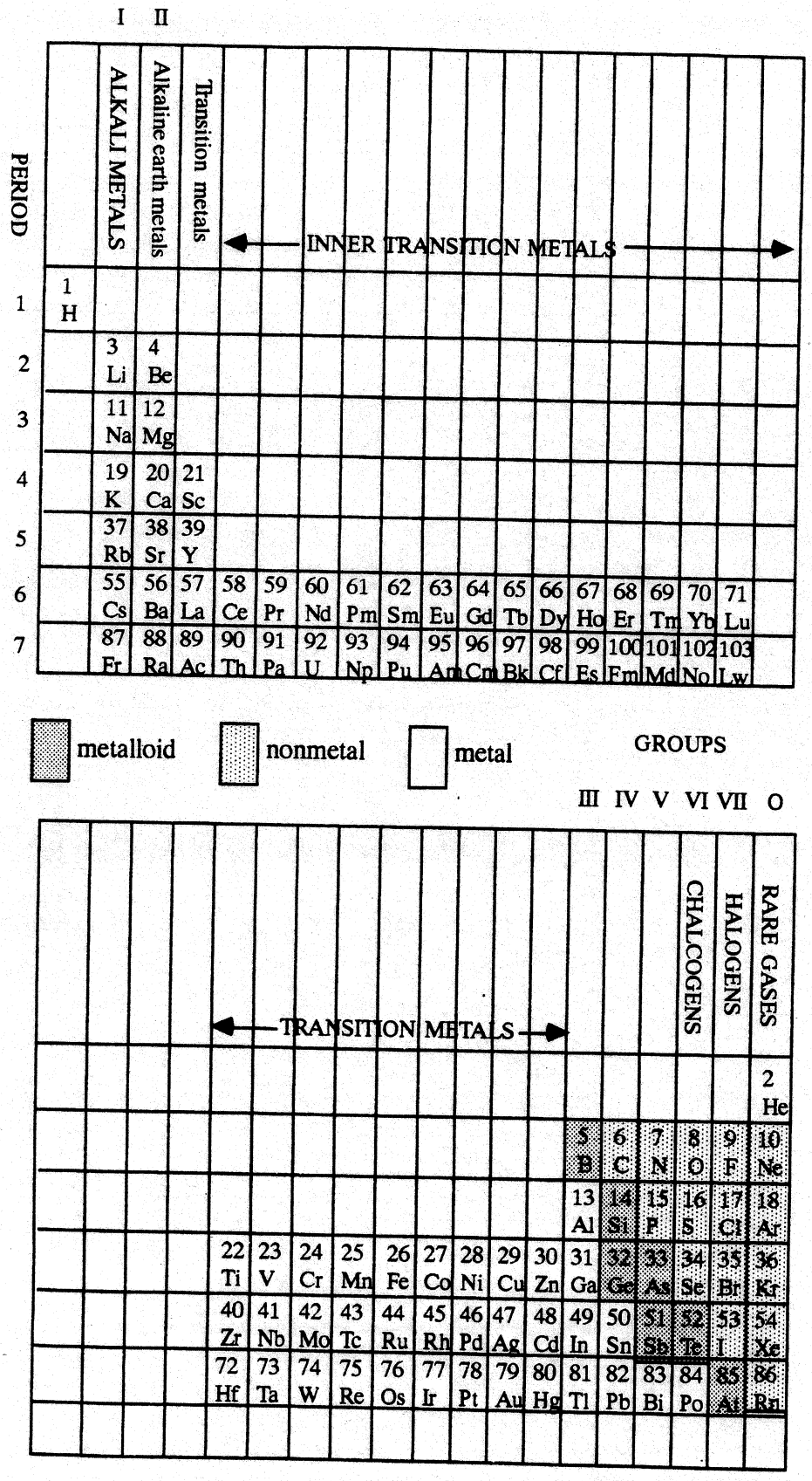
Hydrogen appears on its own in the table. This is because its atomic structure is unique in that its K shell is incomplete and its nucleus is simply a proton; it contains no neutrons. All the other atoms contain neutrons. Nonmetals are found in the top right of the table; metalloids (elements possessing properties of both metals and nonmetals) lie on a diagonal line from boron to astatine; the rest are metals.

The periodic table is one of the most important classifications in science.

ISOTOPES

All the atoms of a given element contain the same number of protons. However, their nuclei need not contain the same number of neutrons. For example, carbon may exist as three different atom types: one containing six neutrons, another seven and the third eight. All three types contain six protons and therefore have identical chemistry. They can be represented diagrammatically as in Fig. 4.3.

Such atoms as these, which have the same number of protons but a different number of neutrons, occupy the same place in the periodic table and are therefore called **isotopes** (Gr. iso, same, +Gr. topos, place). Some isotopes, particularly those produced artificially, are unstable and radioactive.


I II
PERIOD
ALKALI METALS
Alkaline earth metals
Transition metals
INNER TRANSITION METALS
1 H
3 Li 4 Be
11 Na 12 Mg
19 K 20 Ca 21 Sc
37 Rb 38 Sr 39 Y
55 Cs 56 Ba 57 La 58 Ce 59 Pr 60 Nd 61 Pm 62 Sm 63 Eu 64 Gd 65 Tb 66 Dy 67 Ho 68 Er 69 Tm 70 Yb 71 Lu
87 Fr 88 Ra 89 Ac 90 Th 91 Pa 92 U 93 Np 94 Pu 95 Am 96 Cm 97 Bk 98 Cf 99 Es 100 Fm 101 Md 102 No 103 Lw
metalloid
nonmetal
metal
GROUPS
III IV V VI VII O
TRANSITION METALS
CHALCOGENS
HALOGENS
RARE GASES
2 He
5 B 6 C 7 N 8 O 9 F 10 Ne
13 Al 14 Si 15 P 16 S 17 Cl 18 Ar
22 Ti 23 V 24 Cr 25 Mn 26 Fe 27 Co 28 Ni 29 Cu 30 Zn 31 Ga 32 Ge 33 As 34 Se 35 Br 36 Kr
40 Zr 41 Nb 42 Mo 43 Tc 44 Ru 45 Rh 46 Pd 47 Ag 48 Cd 49 In 50 Sn 51 Sb 52 Te 53 I 54 Xe
72 Hf 73 Ta 74 W 75 Re 76 Os 77 Ir 78 Pt 79 Au 80 Hg 81 Tl 82 Pb 83 Bi 84 Po 85 At 86 Rn

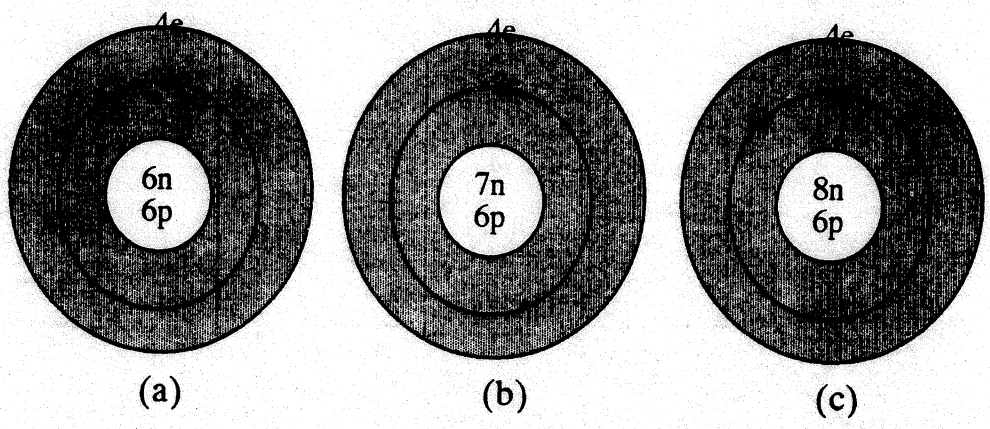


Figure 4.3
Carbon isotopes: (a) carbon 12; (b) carbon 13; (c) carbon 14.

MASS NUMBER

The number of nucleons, the total number of protons and neutrons, in an atom is called its mass number. The **mass number** of the carbon isotope shown in Fig. 4.3(a) is therefore 12 and it is consequently known as carbon-12, usually written ^{12}C. The other isotopes shown in Fig. 4.3 (b) and (c) are ^{13}C and ^{14}C, respectively.

BONDS BETWEEN ATOMS

In all substances, except the rare gases, the atoms are held together by strong forces which we call chemical bonds or simply **bonds**. The properties of a substance are largely determined by the bonds which hold its atoms together and the study of the effect of bonding on properties is really what chemistry is all about.

BONDS BETWEEN ATOMS

Why do atoms form bonds? They do so to become more stable. Experiment has shown that atoms achieve stability by acquiring a certain number of electrons in their outermost shells. The rare gases, for example, already have a stable number of electrons in their outer shells. So atoms of the rare gases (helium, neon, argon, krypton, xenon, and radon) show very little tendency to form bonds; they are very unreactive.

The stable number of electrons in the outer shell for helium is 2 and for the rest of the rare gases is 8.

When the atoms of other elements form bonds they acquire stable numbers of electrons in their outer shell. Examples of such numbers are 2, 8, 10 and 14.

FORMATION OF BONDS

There are four main types of bonds:

1. **Ionic bond**
2. **Covalent bond**
3. **Metallic bond**
4. **Hydrogen bond**

and we shall consider, in turn, how each is formed.

IONIC BOND

This is formed by an atom losing electron(s) to another atom. Let us look at an example.

Na	2,8,1	+	Cl	2,8,7	→	Na^+	2,8	+	Cl^-	2,8,8
11p	11e		17p	17e		11p	10e		17p	18e
SODIUM ATOM			CHLORINE ATOM			SODIUM ION			CHLORINE ION	

The sodium atom loses an electron to the chlorine atom, resulting in the formation of a positive sodium ion Na^+ and a negative chlorine ion Cl^-.

A glance at the numbers of electrons and protons in each ion should satisfy you that the sodium ion has a net charge of +1 and the chlorine ion a net charge of -1.

The bond between these two ions is simply the mutual attraction of oppositely charged particles. This type of bond is called an ionic bond and sodium chloride is said to be an ionic compound. You will notice that each ion in the above example has a stable octet of electrons in its outer shell.

Another reaction involving electron transfer is that between calcium and hydrogen resulting in the formation of the ionic compound, calcium hydride.

Ca	2,8,8,2	+	2H	1	→	Ca^+	2,8,8	+	$2H^+$	2
20p	20e		1p	1e		20p	18e		1p	2e
calcium atom			two hydrogen atoms			calcium ion			two hydrogen ions	

A calcium atom must lose two electrons in order to acquire a stable octet in its outer shell and a hydrogen atom must gain one electron to obtain the stable doublet of helium.

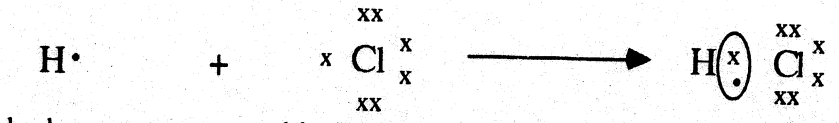
Two hydrogen atoms are therefore needed to take up the two "surplus" electrons of calcium. The upshot is the formation of one positive calcium ion, Ca^{2+} and two negative hydrogen ions, H^-.

The valence of an element is the number of charges carried by each of its ions. Calcium, therefore, has a valence of 2 and is said to be divalent, whereas sodium, chlorine, and hydrogen all have a valence of 1 and are said to be univalent.

You will observe that the valences of calcium and sodium are determined by the number of electrons in their outer shell, whereas the valences of hydrogen and chlorine are determined by the number of electrons needed to complete their outer shell.

COVALENT BOND

This is formed by two atoms sharing a pair of electrons. An example of this is



hydrogen atom chlorine atom hydrogen chloride molecule

The symbol "•" represents an electron in the hydrogen atom and the symbol "x" an electron in the chlorine atom.

Only the electrons in the outermost shells are shown. The shared pair of electrons (shown ringed like this (x•) is reckoned as being in the outermost shell of each atom so that the hydrogen atom now has a stable doublet and the chlorine a stable octet of electrons.

The bond between these two atoms is the attraction which the electron pair has for the positive nuclei of hydrogen and chlorine.

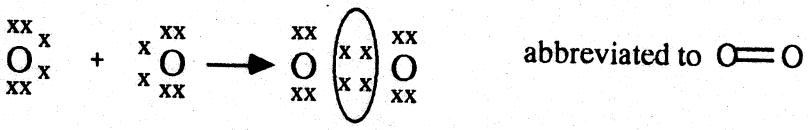
A bond of this type is called a single covalent bond or an electron-pair bond. It is often represented by a line joining the two symbols

H–Cl

A compound in which all the bonds are of this type is called a covalent compound.

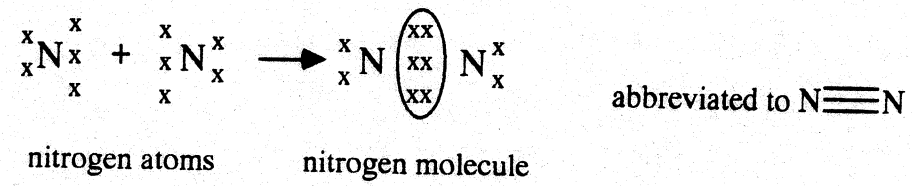
The valence of an element in such a compound is given by the number of bonds it forms, so that hydrogen and chlorine are again seen to be univalent as they are in ionic compounds.

Other examples are



oxygen atoms oxygen molecule abbreviated to O=O

Two pairs of electrons are shared by the oxygen atoms and the bond between them is called a ***double bond.***



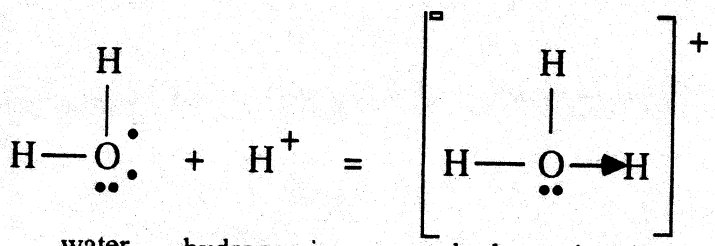
nitrogen atoms nitrogen molecule

The bond between the nitrogen atoms is called a *triple bond* because they share three pairs of electrons.

In the previous three examples each atom contributes one electron to the shared pair.

In some compounds both electrons in the shared pair are provided by one of the atoms only.

Such an electron pair bond is called a *coordinate* covalent bond. It is represented by an arrow pointing from the donor atom to the acceptor atom.



water hydrogen ion hydroxonium ion

METALLIC BOND

As its name suggests, this bond unites atoms in a metal.

Atoms of all metals need to lose electrons to acquire a stable number of electrons in their outermost shells.

The shedding of electrons results in the formation of positive ions.

These ions are arranged in a regular fashion in the metal and the spaces between them are occupied by the liberated electrons, as illustrated in Fig. 5.1.

The electrons attract the oppositely charged ions which are therefore kept in position. The electrons act rather like a cement.

HYDROGEN BOND

When hydrogen combines with oxygen, nitrogen, or fluorine, these elements draw the electrical charge, or the electron-pair, away from the hydrogen, producing a slight positive charge on the hydrogen atom. For example, in hydrogen fluoride one end of the molecule is positively charged and the other negatively charged.

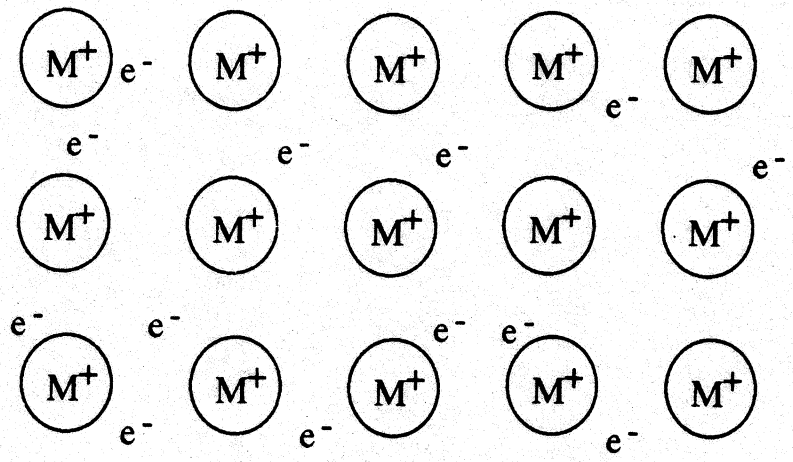


Figure 5.1
Metallic bonding. The metal ions are represented by M^+ and electrons by e^-.

$\delta+ \quad \delta-$ $\delta+$ represents a slight positive charge and
H F $\delta-$ a slight negative charge

So the hydrogen is attracted to the negatively charged fluorine atom (in fact, to one of its nonbonding electron-pairs) in another hydrogen fluoride molecule.

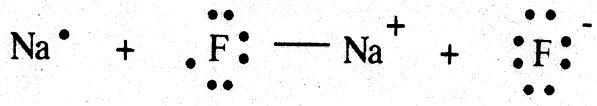
$\delta+ \quad \delta- \qquad \delta+ \quad \delta-$
H F H F

This is an electrostatic bond called the hydrogen bond. It is this type of bond which causes molecules of water to join together, so that water behaves as if it had much bigger molecules than just H_2O, which would be a gas at room temperature.

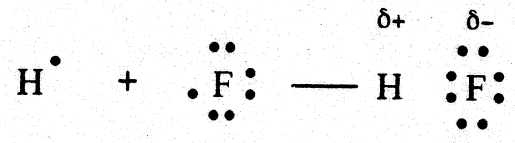
OXIDATION AND REDUCTION

A great many reactions involve either electron transfer or unequal

sharing of electrons. These reactions are grouped together by chemists under the general heading of *redox reactions*. A reaction which involves the loss of electrons is called **oxidation**. The loss may be complete, as by sodium in its reaction with fluorine.



or partial, as by hydrogen in its reaction with fluorine which we have just encountered.



The sodium and hydrogen in these reactions are said to be *oxidized* by the fluorine which is called an *oxidizing* agent.

The reverse of oxidation, the complete or partial gain of electrons, is known as **reduction**. The fluorine is *reduced* by sodium in the first reaction and by hydrogen in the second. Sodium and hydrogen are the *reducing* agents in these reactions.

You have no doubt realized that you cannot have oxidation without reduction, because if a particle is to lose an electron there must be another ready to receive it.

Reactions involving these two important processes are therefore called *reduction-oxidation* reactions, usually abbreviated to *redox* reactions.

CONFIGURATIONS OF ATOMS BONDED TOGETHER

There are two main ways in which atoms can arrange themselves when they bond together. They can form either *molecules* or *giant structures*.

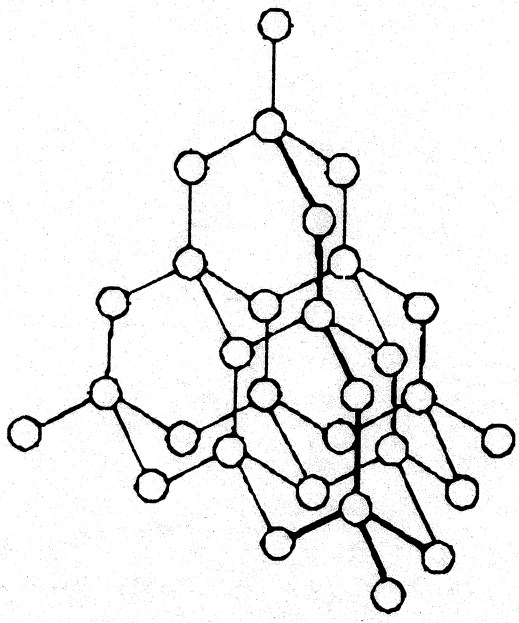


Figure 5.2
Diamond-covalent giant structure. Each carbon atom is joined by covalent bonds to four adjacent carbon atoms.

Molecules, as we have seen, are groups of definite numbers of atoms. The atoms in molecules are always joined together by covalent bonds. Gases, liquids, and low melting-point solids have molecular structures.

In high melting-point solids, however, the atoms or ions bond together not as discrete molecules but as a giant structure of no definite size. When it forms it keeps extending until it is stopped by the sides of the vessel or by a similar giant structure growing towards it. Bonding in giant structures can be either covalent, as in diamond (Fig. 5.2] or ionic, as in sodium chloride (Fig. 5.3).

Compounds with giant structures are represented by an empirical formula (a molecular formula is not appropriate as there are no molecules present). An empirical formula is the simplest possible formula and merely states the simplest atomic ratio of the elements in the compound. Thus, NaCl is the empirical formula of sodium chloride.

BONDS DURING CHEMICAL CHANGES

What happens to the bonds between atoms in a chemical change? The bonds in the starting material must be broken so that the atoms can rearrange themselves to make new substances. New bonds must be

made between the atoms before they can produce the new substances.

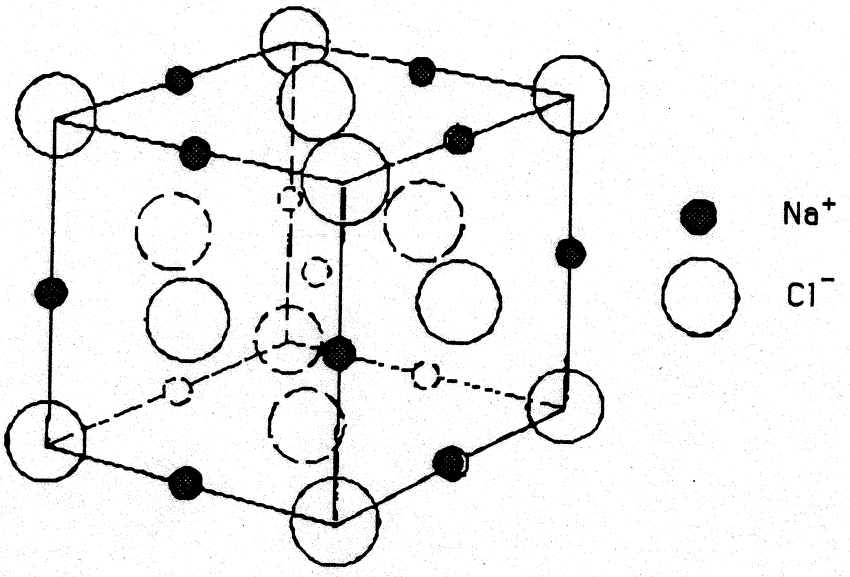


Figure 5.3
Sodium chloride-ionic giant structure. The cube is drawn to show the pattern. The structure is held together by the attraction between positive Na^+ and negative Cl^- ions.

We always have to supply energy in the form of heat, light or electricity to break bonds; energy is always given out when bonds are made. If the energy given out is less than the energy which we supply, the reaction is endothermic and if the energy given out is in excess, it is exothermic. An exothermic reaction giving out a great deal of energy can be explosive such as hydrogen and oxygen combining under certain conditions to form water.

COUNTING ATOMS AND MOLECULES

It is not possible to weigh a single atom or even a single molecule on a balance, but it has been possible to determine the number of particles in a given weight of substance. Thus, 12 g or carbon-12 contains 6.02 x 10^{23} atoms or 602,000, 000, 000, 000, 000, 000, 000 atoms. This enormous number is called one **mole**.

The weights containing a mole of particles of some other substances are given in Table II.

We can therefore count particles by weighing them. For example, if we weigh 44 g of carbon dioxide, then we know that we have a mole of carbon dioxide molecules or 6.02 x 10^{23} molecules.

If we want 1 1/2 moles of these molecules, we must weigh out 1 1/2 x 44 g or 66 g of carbon dioxide.

ATOMIC WEIGHT OF AN ELEMENT

This is the number of grams of the element that contains one mole of atoms. Thu s, carbon-12 has an atomic weight of 12. This statement is usually abbreviated to $^{12}C = 12$. If you look at Table II you will see that the atomic weights of hydrogen and oxygen are 1 and 16 respectively; in short H = 1 and O = 16.

SUBSTANCE	TYPE OF PARTICLE	NUMBER OF GRAMS CONTAINING A MOLE OF PARTICLES
hydrogen	atom	1
hydrogen	molecule	2
oxygen	atom	16
oxygen	molecule	32
carbon dioxide	molecule	44
sodium chloride	pair of Na+ and Cl- ions	58.5

TABLE II. Weights of Moles

FORMULA WEIGHT OF A SUBSTANCE

This is the number of grams of the substance that contains one mole of

particles. These particles are molecules if the substance has a molecular structure and then the term "molecular weight" is usually used instead of "formula weight". Table II tells us that the formula weight of sodium chloride is 58.5.

QUESTION: What are the molecular weights of hydrogen, H_2, oxygen, O_2, and carbon dioxide, CO_2?

ANSWER: hydrogen, 2: oxygen, 32: carbon dioxide, 44.

CALCULATION OF FORMULA WEIGHTS

How do we calculate formula weights? The **formula weight** of a substance is easily calculated from its formula and the atomic weights of the elements in the substance. Let us consider as an example the formula weight of carbon dioxide.

The formula of carbon dioxide is CO_2. This tells us that

1 molecule or carbon dioxide contains:	1 carbon atom and 2 oxygen atoms
1 mole of carbon dioxide molecules contains:	1 mole of carbon atoms and 2 moles of oxygen atoms
1 mole of carbon dioxide molecules contains	12 g of carbon and 2 x 16 g of oxygen (C=12; O=16)
1 mole of carbon dioxide molecules weighs	(12 + 2 x 16)g=44g

Therefore the formula weight (or molecular weight) of carbon dioxide = 44. In general terms, then, the formula weight is obtained by adding up the atomic weights as indicated by the formula. Thus

formula weight of calcium carbonate	=	1 atomic weight of calcium	+	1 atomic weight of carbon	+	3 atomic weights of oxygen
$CaCO_3$	=	40	+	12	+	3x16
	= 100					

QUESTION: What is the formula weight of sulfuric acid, H_2SO_4 (H=1; S=32; O=16)?

2 + 32 + 16x4 = 98

ANSWER: 98

A gram-formula or g-formula of a substance. This is its formula weight given in grams. Thus, 1 g-formula of calcium carbonate is therefore 100 g, and 1/2 g-formula of it would be 50 g.

QUESTION: How many grams of carbon dioxide are equivalent to 2 g-formulas?

C(12) + O(16) + O(16) = 44 x 2 = 88

ANSWER: 88 g

Note: In the case of molecular substances, the term *gram-molecular* (g-molecule) is usually used instead of g-formula.

A gram-atom or g-atom of an element. This is its atomic weight in grams. Thus, 1 g-atom of oxygen is 16 g.

QUESTION: What are 2 1/2 g-atoms of iron, Fe expressed in grams (Fe = 56)?

Fe (56) x 2 1/2 = 140 g

ANSWER: 140 g.

NOTE 1: In current usage, a formula may represent either one particle or one mole of particles; that is a gram-formula. Likewise, the symbol of an element can represent either one atom or one gram-atom of it. You must decide from the context which purpose the formula and the symbol are serving.

NOTE 2: It is important to remember that a g-atom and a g-formula contain the same number of particles, that is, one mole. The importance of these quantities will be dealt with in the chapter on equa-

tions that follows.

CONCENTRATION OF SOLUTIONS

You may have noticed on the labels of bottles, cryptic statements such as 2 mmol/liter (2mmol/l). What does all this mean? It is simply the chemist's way, a very good way in fact, of denoting the **concentration** of the solution in the bottle. The term "mmol" is short for millimole which means one-thousandth of a mole (note that milli- represents a thousandth not a millionth).

The quantity 2 mmol/liter means two-thousandths of a mole per liter; each liter of the solution contains two-thousandths of a mole of particles of solute.

Solute is the name given to the dissolved substance. Or if you prefer, we can say each liter of solution contains two-thousandths of a g-formula of solute.

Another way of denoting concentration is to say that a solution is "so-and-so" **molar**. For example, a solution might be 0.5 molar, which is usually abbreviated to 0.5M. This means that it contains 0.5 moles of solute per liter.

A less informative method is to state how many grams of solute are dissolved in each liter. The label on a bottle of saline solution (sodium chloride NaCl solution) might say that it contains 8.5 g/liter. This is less informative because it does not state how many sodium chloride particles are present in one liter; and it is particles rather than weight that the chemist is particularly interested in. However, it is not a difficult job to convert g/liter into moles/liter.

QUESTION: How many moles/liter are there in an 8.5 g/liter saline solution?

ANSWER: formula weight of NaCl = 58.5 (see Table II)

58.5 g NaCl = 1 mole NaCl

8.5 g NaCl = 8.5/58.5 moles NaCl = 0.15 moles NaCl

8.5 g NaCl/liter = 0.15 moles NaCl/liter = 0.15M NaCl

There is still another way of stating a solution's concentration that we should know about. It is really a variation on the last method. Instead of saying how many grams are dissolved in a liter (which is equivalent to 1000 cubic centimeters or 1000 cm^3), we sometimes say how many grams are dissolved in 100 cm^3 and denote the result as a percentage. Thus, the 8.5 g/liter saline solution referred to earlier contains 0.85 g/100 cm^3 and is therefore called a 0.85% saline solution. This has been quite a common way of denoting concentration. However, in medical practice it is now being replaced by SI Units (Systeme International d'Unites).

SI UNITS (SYSTEME INTERNATIONAL D'UNITES)

In the International System, there is only one base unit for each physical quantity based on the metric system. In this book we are concerned mainly with amounts of substances and with volumes. The pattern of this system is outlined in Table III.

Wherever possible for our purposes, the concentration of substances will be expressed in millimoles per liter, with the units recently used in medical practice given in brackets. In a number of instances, however, for example, where the molecular weight is not known, the concentration is still expressed in terms of the gram, g, or one of its derived units:

milligram = mg = g x 10^{-6}; that is,

$\frac{g}{1000}$ (one-thousandth of a gram)

microgram = μg = g x 10^{-6}; that is,

$\frac{g}{1,000,000}$ (one-millionth of a gram)

nanogram = ng = g x 10^{-9}; that is,

$\frac{g}{1,000,000,000}$ (one-thousand millionth of a gram)

picogram = pg = g x 10^{-12}; that is,

$\frac{g}{1,000,000,000,000}$ (one million-millionth of a gram)

TABLE III. SI UNITS

	BASE UNIT	SYMBOL	DERIVED UNITS	SYMBOL
AMOUNT OF SUBSTANCE	mole	mol	millimole (= mol/1000	mmol
LENGTH	meter	m	centimeter (= m/100 = m/10^2)	cm
			millimeter (= m/1000= m/10^3)	mm
			nanometer (meter/10^9)	nm
VOLUME	cubic meter (This is too big to be practical.)	m^3	cubic centimeter (= milliliter) liter (= 1000 cm^3	cm^3 (ml)

CHEMICAL EQUATIONS

A chemical equation is a shorthand way of representing a reaction using the formulas of the substances concerned. Molecular formulas are used for molecular substances, and empirical formulas are used for those with giant structures.

We have already come across chemical equations in Chapter 5, but we used electronic formulas there in order to show how bonds are formed. Normally such formulas are not used in equations.

The equation for the reaction that occurs when iron is burnt in chlorine gas to form iron(III) chloride (the roman numeral refers to the valence of iron) is

$$2Fe + 3C1_2 = 2FeCl_3$$

Notice that this equation, like all others, is in accord with Dalton's atomic theory which states that atoms are neither created nor destroyed in normal chemical changes. This is confirmed by experiment. This means that the equation must be balanced. By this we mean that on each side of it, there must be the same number of atoms of each element. In the above equation, we observe that there are two iron atoms and six chlorine atoms on each side.

It is wrong to write the equation:

$$Fe + C1_2 = FeCl_3$$

You must resist this temptation! The formula Cl_3 is not the molecular formula of chlorine, and it is wrong to suggest that it is.

How, therefore, do we balance an equation?

One of the methods is to balance the number of atoms of each element in turn by moving from left to right across the left-hand side of the equation.

In our example, the first element on the left-hand side is iron and there is one atom of it.

There is also one iron atom on the right-hand side. Therefore, the iron

atoms are balanced.

The next atom as we move to the right is chlorine and on the left-hand side there are two chlorine atoms that clearly do not balance the three chlorine atoms on the right-hand side.

If there are three chlorine atoms at the end of the reaction, there must be three at the beginning. Thus, there must be 1 1/2 molecules of chlorine to start with.

The equation is therefore balanced if we write

$$2Fe + 3C1_2 = 2FeCl_3$$

which is the correct equation for the reaction. However, it is always a wise precaution to check that the equation really is balanced by repeating the balancing process. This is because it sometimes happens that in balancing the atoms of one element, we upset the balance already achieved for the atoms of another element.

The following example illustrates this difficulty. Let us consider ammonia reacting with heated copper(II) oxide to form copper, water and nitrogen. We obtain the equation for this reaction by first writing

$$\underset{\text{AMMONIA}}{NH_3} + \underset{\text{COPPER(II) OXIDE}}{CuO} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{COPPER}}{Cu} + \underset{\text{WATER}}{H_2O} + \underset{\text{NITROGEN}}{N_2}$$

The "equals" sign is not used because this equation is not balanced.

There is one nitrogen atom on the left, but there are two on the right. We must therefore have two molecules of ammonia on the left-hand side to balance the nitrogen atoms. We obtain the equation for this reaction by first writing

$$2NH_3 + CuO \longrightarrow Cu + H_2O + N_2$$

The next element as we move from left to right is hydrogen. There are six hydrogen atoms on the left-hand side but only two on the right-hand side. In order to have six hydrogen atoms on the right, we must have three molecules of water. Therefore we write

$$2NH_3 + CuO \longrightarrow Cu + 3H_2O + N_2$$

The next element is copper and its atoms are balanced, one on each side. Finally, there are the oxygen atoms to consider with one on the

left and three on the right. If we end up with three, we must start with three; there must be three particles of copper(II) oxide to begin with. Thus:

$$2NH_3 + 3CuO \longrightarrow Cu + 3H_2O + N_2$$

If we check that the equation is balanced by repeating the above process from left to right, we find that the copper atoms are no longer balanced. This is easily corrected by having three atoms of copper on the right-hand side. Thus

$$2NH_3 + 3CuO = 3Cu + 3H_2O + N_2$$

An "**equals**" sign can now be used since a final check shows that the equation is now balanced.

Sometimes we indicate in an equation whether the substances are solid (s), liquid (l), or gaseous (g), or aqueous, dissolved in water, (aq). The equation

$$\underset{(s)}{Na_2CO_3} + \underset{(aq)}{H_2SO_4} = \underset{(aq)}{Na_2SO_4} + \underset{(l)}{H_2O} + \underset{(g)}{CO_2}$$

tells us that the solid sodium carbonate, Na_2CO_3 reacts with aqueous sulfuric acid, H_2SO_4 to form aqueous sodium sulfate, Na_2SO_4, liquid water, H_2O, and carbon dioxide gas, CO_2.

We mentioned in the last chapter that in current practice a formula is often taken to represent one mole of particles. It should be appreciated, therefore, that an equation tells us not merely what substances are involved in a reaction, but also their relative amounts. For example, the equation

$$\underset{(s)}{Fe_2O_3} + \underset{(g)}{3CO} = \underset{(s)}{2Fe} + \underset{(g)}{3CO_3}$$

tells us that 1 mole of iron(III) oxide, Fe_2O_3 reacts with 3 moles of carbon monoxide, CO to give 2 moles of iron atoms Fe and 3 moles of carbon dioxide, CO_2. These quantities are, of course, relative. The actual amounts, for example, might be 1/2 mole of iron(III) oxide, 1 1/2 moles of carbon monoxide, 1 mole of iron and 1 1/2 moles of carbon dioxide. The mole quantities can easily be converted into grams if we know the formula weights of the substances.

METHOD FOR DETERMINING EQUATIONS

We referred to molar solutions in Chapter 6. These can be used to determine the equation for a reaction that occurs in solution. For example, experiment shows that 1 liter of *M* H_2SO_4, or molar sulfuric acid solution, reacts completely with 2 liters of *M* NaOH.

In other words, 1 mole of sulfuric acid, represented by its formula H_2SO_4, reacts with 2 moles of sodium hydroxide represented by 2NaOH. Thus, the left-hand side of the equation must be

$$H_2SO_4 + 2NaOH$$

We can complete the equation provided that we know what substances are formed. In this case, they are sodium sulfate and water. The equation must be

$$H_2SO_4 + 2NaOH = \underset{\text{sodium sulfate}}{Na_2SO_4} + H_2O$$

Not only have we deduced the equation, but also the formula for sodium sulfate.

It must be Na_2SO_4 in order to balance the equation.

Experimentation is done by using the apparatus sketched in Fig. 7.1. It is possible to determine the volume of *M* NaOH that is required to react completely with 10 cm^3 of *M* H_2SO_4 (we use 10 cm^3 as it is extravagant and unwieldy to use a liter). Our determination is easily made since there are certain substances, such as screened methyl orange and phenolphthalein, that obligingly change color when all the acid has reacted.

These substances are, not surprisingly, called *indicators*.

It is found that 10 cm^3 of *M* H_2SO_4 requires 20 cm^3 of *M* NaOH for a complete reaction.

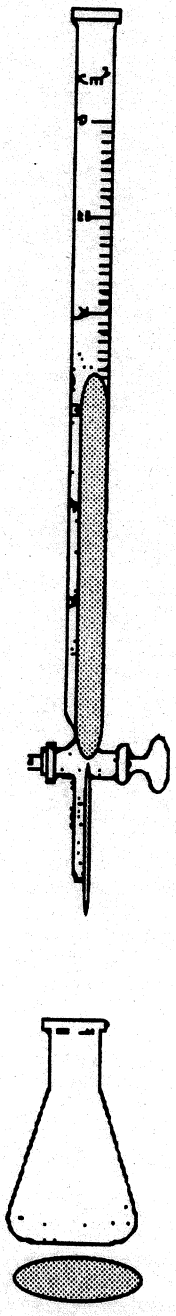


Figure 7.1
Titration, using burette and flask

Therefore, 1 liter of *M* H_2SO_4 will react completely with 2 liters of *M* NaOH, which enables us to determine the equation as explained above.

The use of a burette in this way (Fig. 7.1) is know as *titration*, and by convention we say that one solution is titrated against the other.

REVERSIBLE REACTIONS

Sometimes we use "double arrows" in an equation.

$$\underset{\text{NITROGEN}}{N_2} + \underset{\text{HYDROGEN}}{3H_2} \longleftrightarrow \underset{\text{AMMONIA}}{2NH_3}$$

These double arrows tell us that the reaction is reversible; by this we mean that it "goes both ways." In the example given, nitrogen and hydrogen combine to form ammonia, called the **forward reaction**; and ammonia also decomposes to give nitrogen and hydrogen, called the **reverse reaction**. It would therefore appear impossible to make ammonia from its constituent elements. This is not so, however, for the following reason.

The rate at which substances react together depends on their concentration. The greater the concentration, the faster the substances react since there is a greater chance of the particles colliding.

This means that when ammonia is first produced, it decomposes slowly because its concentration is low. Conversely, nitrogen and hydrogen react relatively fast at the outset to form ammonia because their concentration is high. As time goes on the concentration of ammonia increases and so the ammonia decomposes faster.

Meanwhile, the ammonia is being produced more slowly, as the concentrations of nitrogen and hydrogen are decreasing. Eventually, ammonia decomposes as fast as it is being formed. That is, the speed of the forward reaction balances the speed of the reverse reaction. Beyond this balancing point, it is not possible to make any more ammonia under these conditions, but at least some ammonia can be made.

When the speeds of the forward and reverse reactions become equal (or balanced), we say that the system is in **dynamic equilibrium**. We refer to this equilibrium as dynamic because the forward and reverse reactions continue after the equilibrium has been reached, but their speeds remain equal.

There are many more chemical equations to be looked at as we continue

to explore the field of chemistry. These equations should present us with no difficulty provided that we have read and examined this chapter carefully.

COMBUSTION RESPIRATION

Antoine Lavoisier, the French chemist, whose brilliant career was truncated by the guillotine, realized that combustion provided the clue to the chemistry of respiration. Both processes are characterized by the release of energy.

In the combustion of a fire the energy is released mainly in the form of heat and the rate of release is very rapid.

In respiration only a small part of the energy is released as heat, the greater part being stored in energy-rich compounds that release energy when it is required for the various forms of cellular activity. This latter process is under firm control. Before delving into the differences between these two processes, let us first investigate their similarities.

COMBUSTION

EXPERIMENT 1

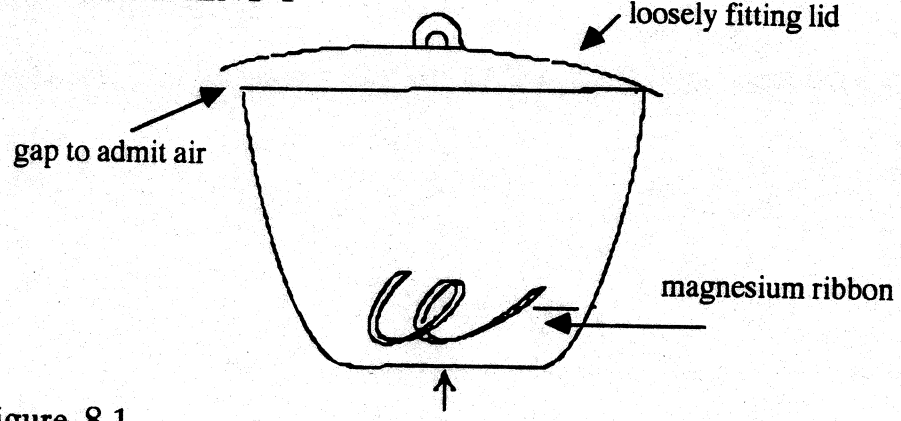


Figure 8.1
Apparatus for Experiment 1 (combustion)

METHOD

A porcelain crucible containing a piece of magnesium ribbon is weighed, together with the crucible lid. The crucible is then heated for a few minutes as shown in Fig. 8.1, so that the magnesium burns. The crucible and the white ash that remains are allowed to cool and are then weighed together with the lid.

OBSERVATION:

The white ash weighs more than the magnesium.

CONCLUSION:

The magnesium has gained "something".

WHERE DOES THE "SOMETHING" COME FROM?

One possible source is the air. We must now test our hunch in the next experiment.

EXPERIMENT 2

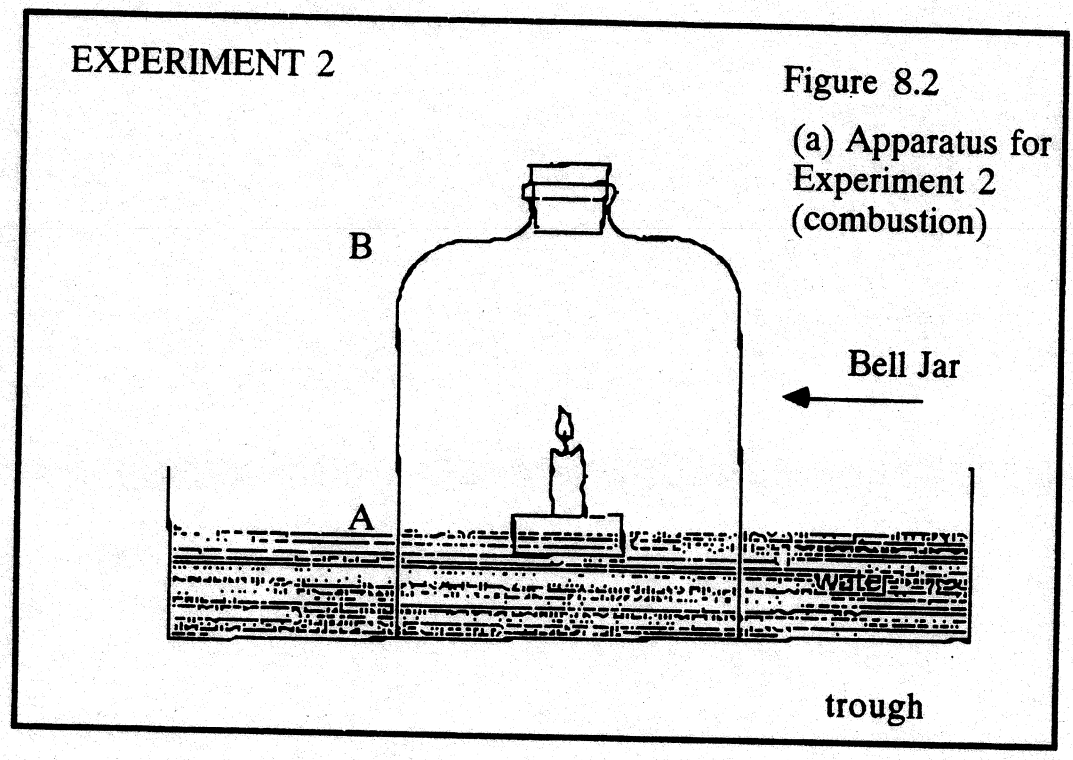


Figure 8.2

(a) Apparatus for Experiment 2 (combustion)

METHOD:

A burning candle is placed on a block of wood which floats on water in a trough. A bell-jar is now placed over the candle and then stoppered (Fig. 8.2 (b)

OBSERVATIONS:

1. The candle soon stops burning.
2. The water rises a little inside the bell-jar (Fig. 8.2 (b)

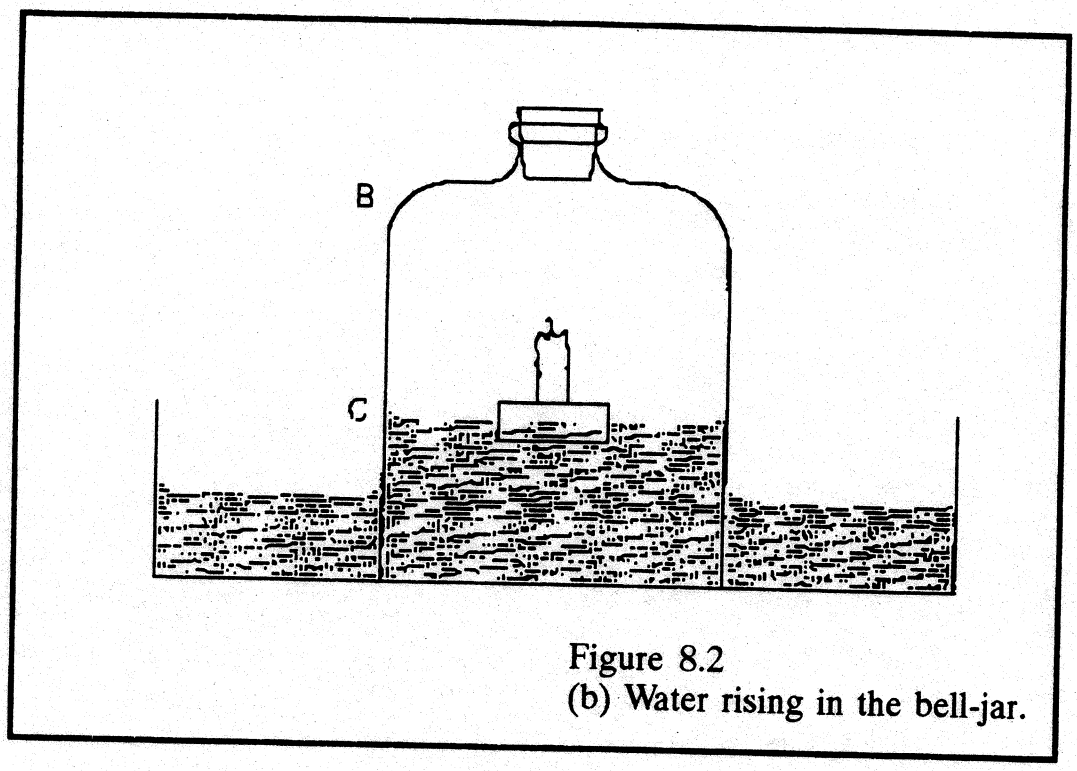


Figure 8.2
(b) Water rising in the bell-jar.

CONCLUSION:

Part of the air is used up during burning; our hunch was right!. We call this part of the air oxygen. The rest is mainly nitrogen.

FURTHER SUPPORT FOR OUR CONCLUSION

To prove beyond doubt that a burning substance gains oxygen from the air, we must recover the oxygen from the product of burning. This is usually not an easy thing to do. It was first done in the 18th century by Lavoisier. He recovered oxygen from the red powder left after mercury is burnt by heating the powder strongly. This decomposed it into mercury and a colorless, odorless gas. He then proved that this gas was the one taken out of the air by the burning mercury; in other words he proved it to be oxygen.

Lavoisier then put forward the theory of combustion which we hold today. His theory states that when a substance burns in air, it combines with oxygen. The energy given out in this chemical reaction appears as heat and if there is a flame or glow, some of the energy is in the form of light as well (a flame is simply hot gas, which emits light). The burning substance combines with oxygen to form an oxide. The white

ash formed when magnesium burns in air is magnesium oxide and the equation for the reaction is

$$\underset{\text{MAGNESIUM}}{2Mg}\ (s) + \underset{\text{OXYGEN}}{O_2}\ (g) = \underset{\text{MAGNESIUM OXIDE}}{2MgO}\ (s)$$

The magnesium is **oxidized** to magnesium oxide since it loses electrons to oxygen.

RESPIRATION

EXPERIMENT 1

Breathe on a cold, dry metal spoon.

OBSERVATION:

The spoon becomes dull and wet. The liquid can be shown to be water.

CONCLUSION:

Water vapor is produced when we breathe. The vapor condenses on the cold spoon.

EXPERIMENT 2

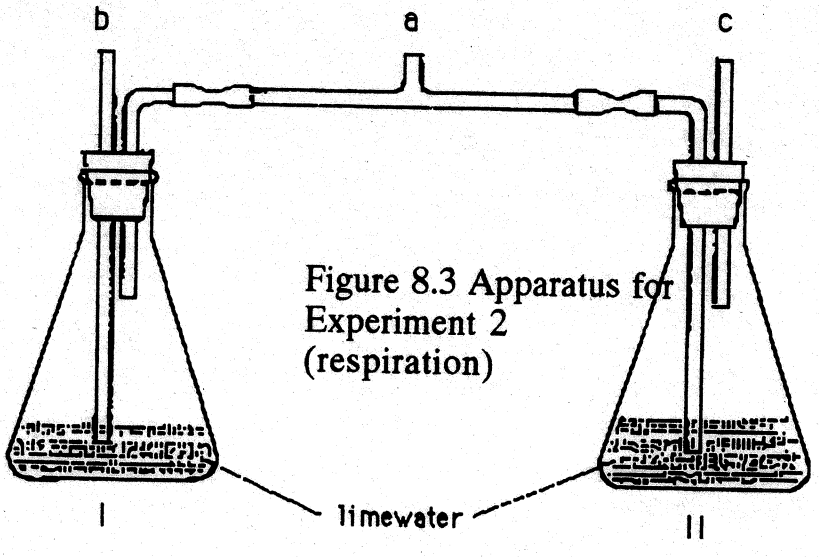


Figure 8.3 Apparatus for Experiment 2 (respiration)

Using the apparatus shown in Fig. 8.3 we can identify another product of breathing.

METHOD

One breathes through tube a, closing tube c with the finger when breathing in and closing tube b when breathing out. This ensures that the inhaled air passes through the limewater in flask I and the exhaled air through the limewater in flask II.

OBSERVATION:

The limewater in flask II soon turns milky. This is the test for carbon dioxide.

CONCLUSION:

Flask I is used because air contains a small proportion of carbon dioxide. This is absorbed by the limewater in flask I. Milkiness in flask II can therefore be caused only by carbon dioxide in exhaled air.

HUMAN PRODUCTION OF CARBON DIOXIDE AND WATER VAPOR

Why are carbon dioxide and water vapor produced when we breathe?

The oxygen, which we take in when we breathe, reacts with the sugars and starches which the body gets from food. The products of these chemical reactions are carbon dioxide, water vapor and energy.

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 = 6CO_2 + 6H_2O + \text{energy}$$

GLUCOSE
(A SUGAR)

The energy of this reaction keeps us alive. It enables all the muscles of the body to work and keeps the temperature of the body virtually constant at 37° C, the temperature at which the body functions best.

Thus, when we breathe, oxygen from the air reacts with substances in our bodies to produce oxides and energy. The end products are the same as those produced when these substances burn in air. The energy produced is also the same, 2831 kilojoules for every mole of glucose. It is the steps by which the energy is released that are different.

When we inhale, air passes down our air passages, which branch into progressively smaller and smaller tubes, until it reaches small blind sacs called alveoli (Fig. 8.4(a)).

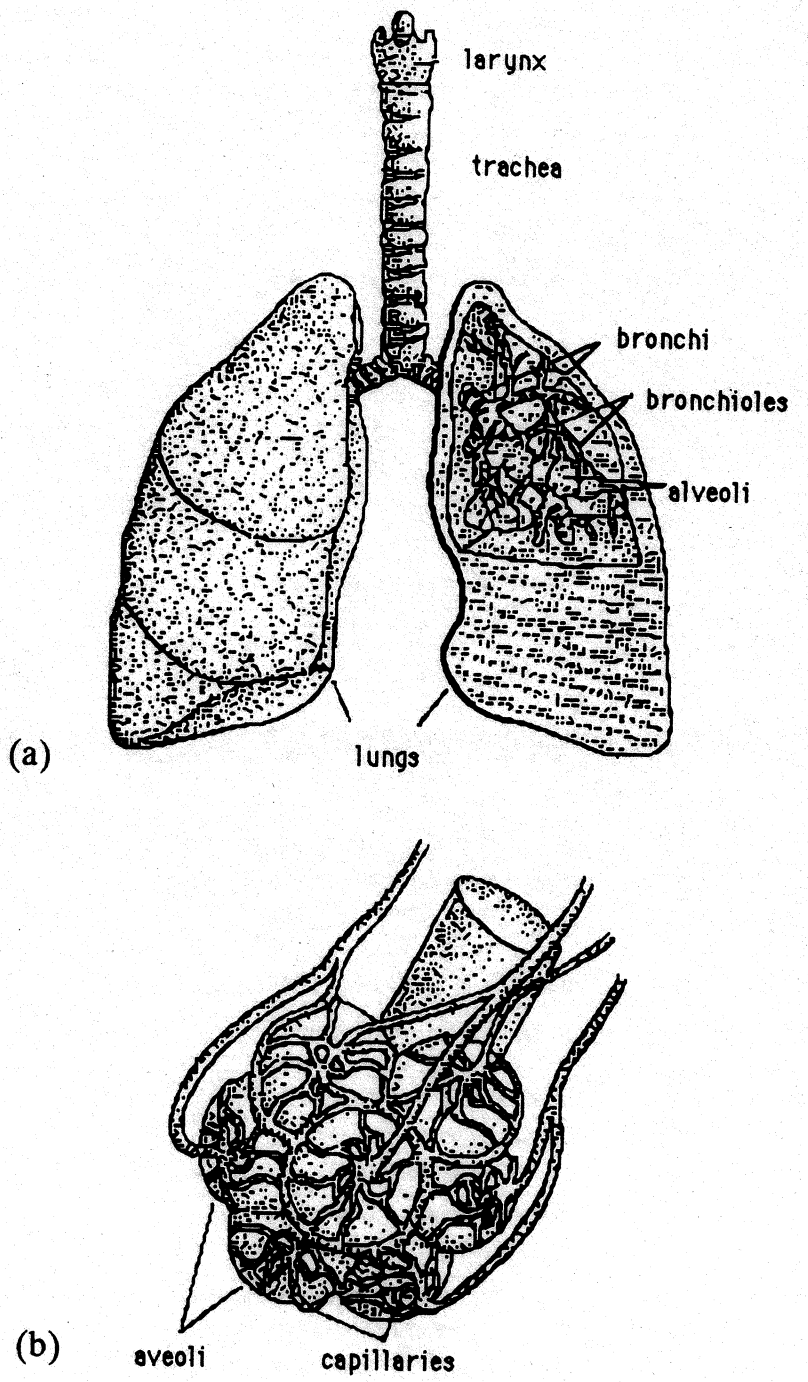


Figure 8.4
(a) Air passages leading to alveoli; (b) capillary network in alveolar walls.

These alveoli have very thin walls through which dissolved oxygen can readily pass to enter the blood flowing through the numerous capillaries in the alveolar walls (Fig. 8.4(b)).

The movement of air down the larger tubes is mainly due to the muscles of respiration and the natural elasticity of the lungs.

The movement of the air gases through the smallest airways and particularly through the walls of the alveoli is largely due to the process called **diffusion**.

This, as you will no doubt remember, is the natural tendency of gases to spread throughout any space they occupy, due to their molecules being in constant motion.

When the air gases enter the lung capillaries, the dissolved oxygen is immediately taken up by the hemoglobin in the red cells.

Hemoglobin before it combines with the oxygen is called **reduced hemoglobin** and is blue in color.

After combination with oxygen it becomes bright red oxyhemoglobin. The **oxyhemoglobin** in the red cells is carried by the circulation to the tissues where it readily dissociates into reduced hemoglobin and oxygen.

The combination of hemoglobin with oxygen is a reversible reaction, represented by the double arrows in the following equation.

hemoglobin + oxygen ⟷ oxyhemoglobin

The arrows indicate the dynamic equilibrium between the two sides of the equation. If more oxygen is added to the left-side it promotes the formation of more oxyhemoglobin on the right-side to restore the balance.

If oxygen is removed from the left-side, the balance is restored by oxyhemoglobin dissociating to release more oxygen.

In the lungs the oxygen is practically at atmospheric pressure and there is a correspondingly high **oxygen tension**, by this we mean pressure in fluid, in the lung capillaries. These conditions promote the formation of oxyhemoglobin and the reaction proceeds from left to right as

hemoglobin + oxygen ⟶ oxyhemoglobin

When the blood reaches the tissue capillaries the conditions are different, especially if the tissues are active, for example in a contracting muscle.

Active tissues use up oxygen and so the oxygen tension in the tissue capillaries is lower than in the lungs. The low oxygen tension causes the reaction to proceed from right to left.

$$\underset{\text{BLUE}}{\text{hemoglobin}} + \text{oxygen} \longleftarrow \underset{\text{RED}}{\text{oxyhemoglobin}}$$

The bright red oxyhemoglobin dissociates, giving up its oxygen and becoming reduced hemoglobin which gives venous blood its bluish color.

Where tissue is active there is a raised temperature and increased acidity.

Both these factors have been shown by experiment to assist in promoting the release of oxygen from oxyhemoglobin.

The released oxygen dissolves in the plasma and tissue fluid, through which it travels by diffusion to reach the cells.

The cell wall allows it to pass through into the cytoplasm where it finally reaches the **mitochondria** (Fig. 8.5(a)).

These are organelles, small organs, within the cell which are characteristically sausage-shaped and incompletely divided by cristae into a series of communicating compartments (Fig. 8.5(b)).

It is in the mitochondria that the actual combination of oxygen with sugar takes place.

If the combination occurred all at once the amount of energy released would be so great that the cell would be destroyed. Instead, the reaction takes place in a series of small steps, releasing a small amount of energy at each step.

The structure of the mitochondria appears very suitable for a series of chemical reactions occurring in such steps. The energy released is used to build special chemical molecules providing short term stores of energy, which can be used by tissues such as muscles or brain cells as required. These energy-rich molecules are called ATP, adenosine triphosphate. Without a continual supply of ATP the cells would stop functioning and we would die. Respiration is essential to maintain this supply.

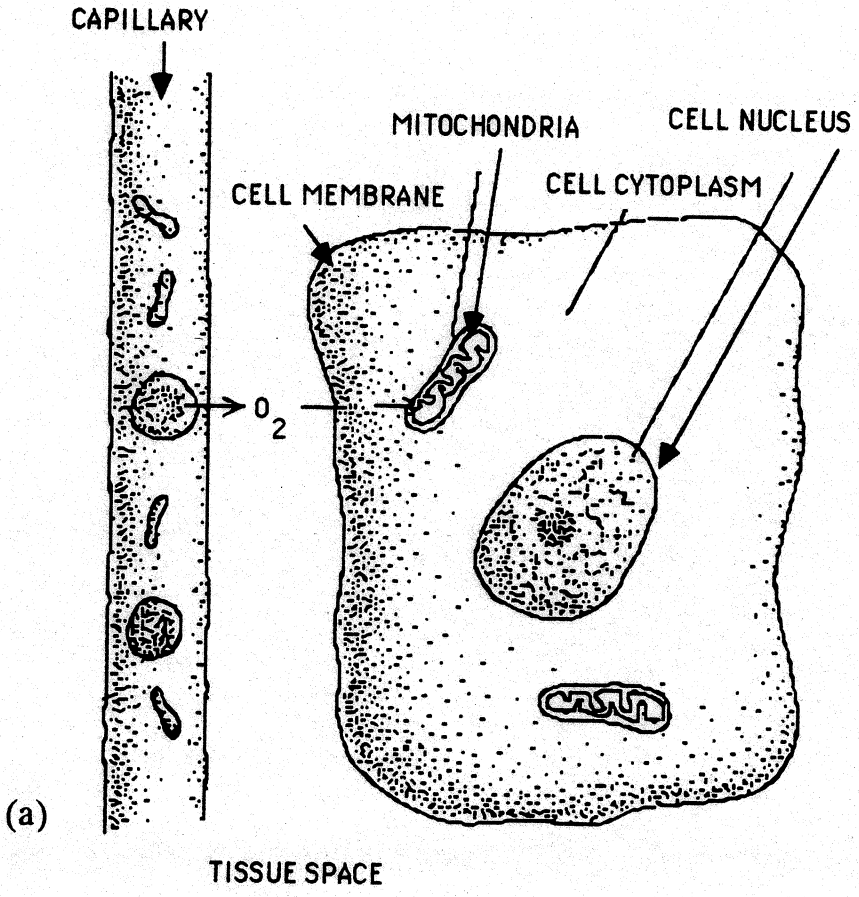
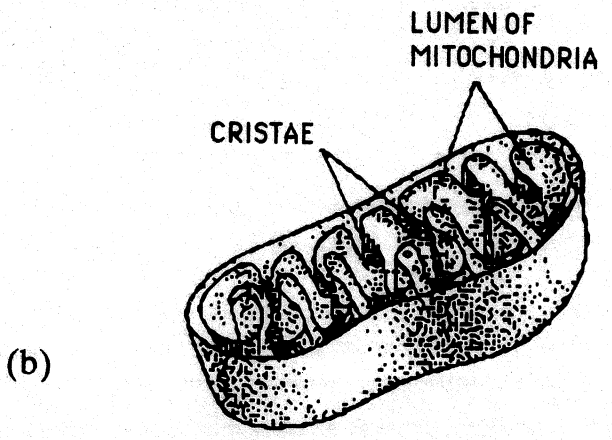


Figure 8.5

(a) Diffusion of oxygen from red blood cells to mitochondria of tissue cells;
(b) mitochondria cut across to show internal structure



REMOVAL OF CARBON DIOXIDE FROM THE HUMAN BODY

When the sugar (glucose) has been oxidized in the cell, carbon dioxide and water are formed.

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 = 6CO_2 + 6H_2O + \text{energy}$$

Carbon dioxide is a gas, although no gas is actually produced because it dissolves in water to form carbonic acid.

$$CO_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow H_2CO_3$$

carbonic acid

This would be poisonous to the cells if it were allowed to accumulate. But it rapidly diffuses out of the cells into the surrounding tissue fluid and from these into the capillaries (Fig. 8.6).

Once it reaches the blood the carbonic acid is partly neutralized by the sodium carbonate in the blood stream. Bicarbonate of soda is produced.

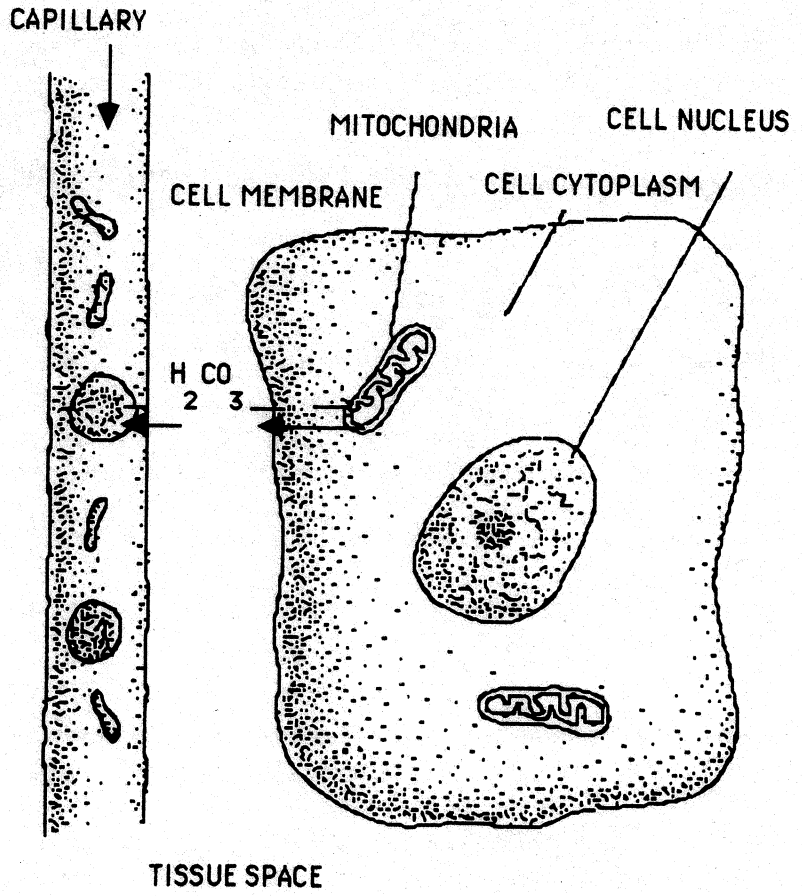


Figure 8.6
Diffusion of carbonic acid from cell to capillary

$$\underset{\text{sodium carbonate}}{Na_2CO_3} + \underset{\text{carbonic acid}}{H_2CO_3} \longleftrightarrow \underset{\text{sodium bicarbonate}}{2NaHCO_3}$$

This is another reversible reaction, as indicated by the arrows pointing in each direction. In the tissues, when cell respiration is continually producing more carbon dioxide there is a relatively high concentration of carbonic acid.

The more carbonic acid is produced, the more it combines with sodium carbonate to form bicarbonate of soda.

$$Na_2CO_3 + H_2CO_3 \longrightarrow 2NaHCO_3$$

But when it reaches the lungs the process is reversed. The carbonic acid is now very weak because the lungs are continually removing it and so the bicarbonate of soda readily splits up, or **dissociates**, to release more carbonic acid.

$$2NaHCO_3 \longrightarrow Na_2CO_3 + H_2CO_3$$

The carbonic acid diffuses out from the lung capillaries into the alveoli, further dissociating into carbon dioxide and water which are breathed out in the exhaled air.

$$H_2CO_3 \longrightarrow H_2O + CO_2$$

It is, in fact, the amount of carbon dioxide dissolved in the blood which is the main factor in controlling the depth and rapidity of respiration, acting through the respiratory center in the brain.

The anaesthetist uses carbon dioxide in the operating theater when he wants to stimulate the patient's respiration. Too much carbon dioxide, however, is dangerous as it poisons the respiratory center.

OXYGEN AND NITROGEN IN THE AIR

What are the proportions of oxygen and nitrogen in the air?

Approximate values for these can be obtained quite easily from Experiment 2 concerning combustion. The volume of gas in the bell-jar is proportional to the height of the jar above the water surface. The volume of air is proportional to AB (Fig. 8.2(a)) and the volume of nitrogen is proportional to BC (Fig. 8.2(b)). Thus,

$$\frac{\text{volume of nitrogen}}{\text{volume of air}} = \frac{BC}{AB}$$

$$\text{percentage by volume of nitrogen in the air} = \frac{BC}{AB} \times 100$$

Since the volume of a gas varies with the temperature and the pressure, a more accurate result is obtained if BC is measured after (1) allowing the apparatus to cool and (2) equalizing the water levels inside and outside the bell-jar. These two precautions ensure that the original air and the remaining nitrogen are at the same temperature and pressure.

The proportion of nitrogen in the air is found to be about 80%. Therefore, the proportion of oxygen is about 20%.

A more complete analysis of air shows it to be a mixture of a number of gases with the following volume composition:

nitrogen	about 80%
oxygen	about 20%
carbon dioxide	about 0.03%
rare gases (helium, neon, argon, krypton, and xenon)	about 1%
water vapor	variable percentage

PHOTOSYNTHESIS

Why do the proportions of oxygen and carbon dioxide in the air remain constant?

All living things breathe, by this we mean take in oxygen from the air and give out carbon dioxide into the air.

Fuels, which are compounds of carbon, also replace atmospheric oxygen with carbon dioxide when they are burnt. Why is it then that the oxygen of the air has not been completely replaced by carbon dioxide?

The reason is that green plants, in daylight, take up carbon dioxide from the air and give out oxygen. This compensatory process is known as **photosynthesis** (Gr. photo, light, +Gr. *synthesis*, building up). The process is so-called because the green plants, with the aid of light energy, build up sugars and starches from carbon dioxide in the air taken in by the leaves and water in the soil taken up by the roots.

$$6CO_{2(g)} + 6H_2O_{(1)} + \text{light energy} = C_6H_{12}O_{6(aq)} + 6O_{2(g)}$$

We notice that photosynthesis is the reverse of the reaction which takes place during respiration. It occurs only in green plants because the green coloring matter, called chlorophyll, is needed to absorb light energy. It is this energy, released from food by respiration, which provides the power house for virtually all life.

ELECTROCHEMISTRY

ENERGY CHANGES IN CHEMICAL REACTIONS

Energy is what we and machines need to do work. There are various forms of energy, such as heat, light, electrical, and kinetic energy.

The steam engine works only if it receives heat from burning fuel.

The electric lawn mower will not work without electrical energy.

The moving hammer which knocks a nail into the wall for us, possesses energy simply because it is moving. This type of energy is called **kinetic energy.** If the hammer were stationary it would have no kinetic energy and would be unable to do work for us.

The **law of conservation of energy** is a fundamental law of nature. It states that provided there is no change in mass, energy cannot be created or destroyed. It can be changed in form, that is, changed into some other kind of energy.

Most chemical reactions give out heat: they are called **exothermic** (Gr. exo, out, + Gr. therme, heat). The law of conservation of energy tells us that this heat cannot be created from nothing. Some other form of energy must have been converted into heat. Clearly then, the chemicals formed in the reaction must have less energy than the chemicals from which they were made, so that some chemical energy is changed into heat energy.

If a reaction is **endothermic**, absorbs heat, then during the chemical change heat is converted into chemical energy, so that the chemicals formed have more chemical energy than those which produced them.

In some reactions, chemical energy is changed into light which is also a form of energy. We are all familiar with the light from a coal fire. A more exotic example is the "fire" of the firefly. This is one of the rare examples of the chemical emission of "coldlight."

The reverse process, changing light into chemical energy, is the principle underlying photography. Light falls on a photographic film and changes a little silver bromide in the film into silver. The amount of silver formed is proportional to the amount of light falling on the film. Thus,

we obtain a silver "image" of the subject photographed.

The outstanding example, however, of the conversion of light into chemical energy is photosynthesis which we met with in the last chapter.

Sunlight is converted into chemical energy in green plants, the chemical energy being stored in the sugars and starches which are photosynthesized.

Animals obtain all their energy requirements from sugars and starches in plants and from animal proteins which are themselves built up from plant sugars and starches.

Fuels, such as oil, gas, and coal are products of animal and vegetable decay.

The chemical energy of fuels is therefore derived from the sun.

Apart from nuclear energy (which we shall discuss in a later chapter) all energy on earth comes from the sun. It is not surprising that primitive peoples were sun worshippers; perhaps they had more insight into life processes than we give them credit for.

ELECTROCHEMISTRY

This is that branch of chemistry that is concerned with the interconversion of chemical and electrical energy. A device that converts chemical energy into electrical is called a **voltaic cell** and one which does the opposite is called an **electrolytic cell**.

You are, of course, familiar with voltaic cells. The car, flashlight, and hearing-aid batteries are common examples.

Electrolytic cells are probably less well known to you, but they are of great industrial importance. Sodium, chlorine, aluminium and certain household bleaches are just a few examples of substances which are produced in electrolytic cells. Copper electroplating is also carried out in this type of cell.

VOLTAIC CELLS

In these cells a chemical reaction is carried out in such a way that chemical energy is converted into electrical energy instead of into heat. The reaction that is used in the car battery is

$$\underset{\substack{(s)\\ \text{LEAD}}}{Pb} + \underset{\substack{(s)\\ \text{LEAD DIOXIDE}}}{PbO_2} \quad \underset{\substack{(aq)\\ \text{SULFURIC ACID}}}{2H_2SO_4} + \underset{\substack{(s)\\ \text{LEAD SULFATE}}}{2PbSO_4} + \underset{(l)}{2H_2O}$$

The equation in ionic form is

$$Pb + PbO_2 \quad \underset{\substack{\text{HYDROGEN}\\ \text{IONS}}}{4H^+} + \underset{\substack{\text{LEAD}\\ \text{IONS}}}{2Pb^{2+}} + 2H_2O$$

This is a **redox reaction**, as indeed are all voltaic cell reactions. This is evident if we split the reaction into two halves

$$Pb = Pb^{2+} + \underset{(2\ \text{ELECTRONS})}{2e^-} \qquad \text{oxidation}$$

$$PbO_2 + 4H^+ + \underset{(2\ \text{ELECTRONS})}{2e^-} = Pb^{2+} + 2H_2O \qquad \text{reduction}$$

Electrons are transferred from the lead to the lead dioxide and hydrogen ions.

If the lead, lead dioxide and acid are mixed in a beaker, the chemical energy is changed into heat. How do we prevent this happening in the battery? The solution is rather ingenious. The lead and lead dioxide are separated as shown in the schematic representation of the cell in Fig. 9.1.

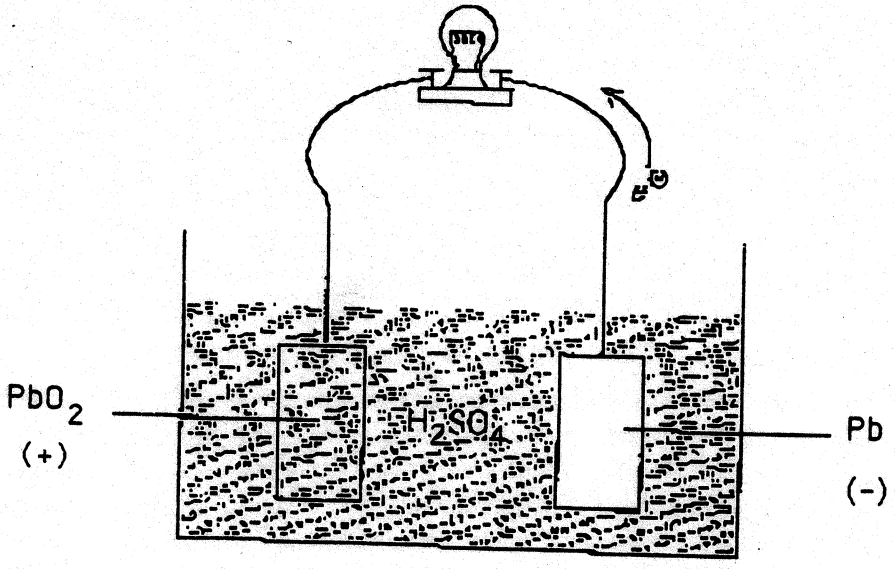


Figure 9.1
Voltaic cell

We have seen that for the reaction to occur electrons must be transferred from the lead to the lead dioxide and hydrogen ions. In the cell, this can only happen if we connect the lead and lead dioxide by a wire. This electron flow is called an electric current. Thus the reaction, as it proceeds, gives out electrical energy and the bulb lights (in the bulb, electrical energy is converted into light energy and some heat).

ELECTRICAL ENERGY FROM LIVING ORGANS

We have seen how the chemical reactions in a voltaic cell produce an electric current.

In a rather similar way certain chemical reactions in the human body produce electric currents. With suitable instruments these currents can be recorded.

The pattern of the record indicates whether the organ is functioning normally or not. A well-known example of this is the electrocardiogram.

ELECTROCARDIOGRAM ECG

The electrocardiogram is the record of the electrical impulses produced by the chemical changes in contracting heart muscle. The instrument used for recording these impulses is the **electrocardiograph**. This is often portable so that it can be taken to the patient's bedside. Wires from the instrument are attached to each limb and recordings are taken from the following sites:

lead-I	right arm and left arm
lead-II	right arm and left leg
lead-III	left arm and left leg

In addition to these standard leads there are also chest leads and unipolar limb leads.

A contracting muscle is electrically negative compared to a resting muscle. So electrons tend to flow from contracting to resting muscles.

In a normal heart there is an orderly progression of the muscular contraction and its associated electrical impulses over the walls of the atria and the ventricles (Fig. 9.2(a)).

If there is damage to the heart muscle or to the special atrio-ventricular conducting system (see Fig. 9.5) this normal progression is disturbed.

From the abnormal pattern produced by the electrical impulses on the ECG it is often possible to diagnose the abnormality present in the heart (Fig. 9.2(b)).

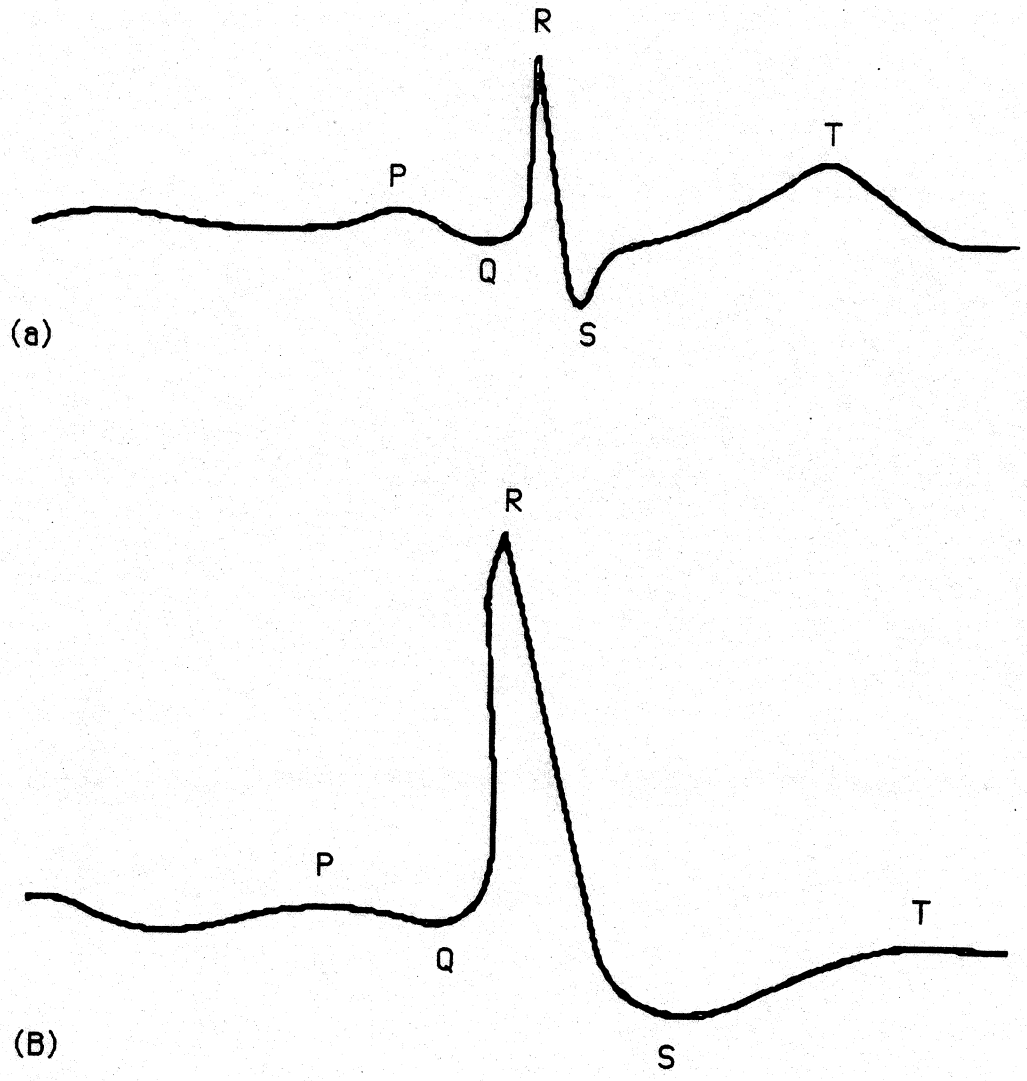


Figure 9.2
ECG: (a) normal; (b) abnormal (note the depression of the ST segment due to heart muscle damage resulting from coronary artery disease).

ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAM EEG

The electroencephalogram is the record of the electrical impulses produced by the chemical changes occurring in the living brain. The instrument used is the electroencephalograph. It is attached by numerous wires to the subject's head. Multiple recordings are taken simultaneously on very large rolls of paper.

When the subject's eyes are closed the normal brain shows a rhythmical pattern of waves called alpha and beta waves. This pattern is interrupted when the eyes are opened.

Abnormal patterns are seen from the brains of people who are subject to epilepsy or when a tumor is present. In view of the complexity of the equipment it is not portable. So the patient must be taken to the EEG room.

ELECTROLYTIC CELLS

Electrolytic cells are the reverse of batteries and enable electrical energy to be changed into chemical energy. This is done by passing an electric current through a compound when it is either molten (fused) or dissolved in water. This decomposes the compound and new substances are formed at the electrodes. Such a decomposition is called **electrolysis** and compounds capable of being decomposed in this way are known as **electrolytes.**

Some compounds, for example, sodium chloride, are good conductors of electricity, in solution or when molten. We say they are strong electrolytes. Others, such as acetic acid, are poor conductors and are said to be weak electrolytes.

ELECTROLYSIS OF SODIUM CHLORIDE

If an electric current is passed through molten sodium chloride (Fig. 9.3), chlorine gas bubbles off at the anode and molten sodium is formed at the cathode. How can we explain this decomposition? It is not too difficult. All we have to realize is that an electric current is a flow of electrons and that sodium chloride is an ionic compound consisting of sodium ions Na^+ and chlorine ions Cl^-.

The battery pumps electrons on to the cathode, making it negative so that it attracts the sodium ions Na^+. When they reach the cathode they are reduced by the electrons to sodium atoms; thus, metallic sodium is formed.

$$Na+ \quad e- \quad = \quad Na \quad \text{(reduction)}$$

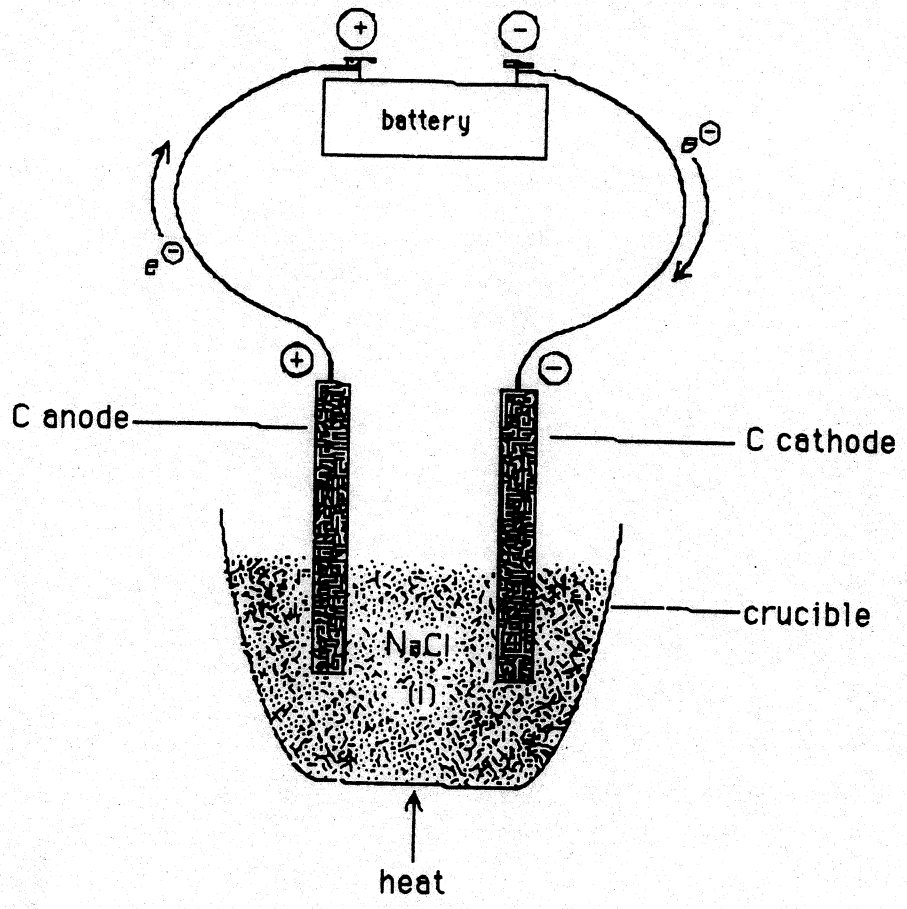


Figure 9.3
Electrolysis of sodium chloride

The anode, being positive, attracts the chlorine ions Cl^-, and these give up electrons to the anode.

$$2Cl^- = Cl_2 + 2e^- \qquad \text{(oxidation)}$$

The electrons then flow back to the battery, completing the circuit.

Sodium and chlorine are manufactured by this method; however, precautions are taken to prevent the molten sodium from combining with the chlorine to reform sodium chloride. It must also be kept from the air, otherwise it would combine with atmospheric oxygen to form sodium oxide.

ELECTROLYSIS OF SODIUM CHLORIDE SOLUTION

If a solution of sodium chloride is used instead of molten sodium chloride, then electrolysis gives different products.

Hydrogen gas bubbles off at the cathode and this is one way of producing hydrogen on a commercial scale. The product at the anode depends on the concentration of the salt solution.

A strong solution gives chlorine and a weak one gives oxygen.

Moderately concentrated solutions give both gases.

How do we account for these different products? The big difference in this electrolysis is that water is present. This means that, at the cathode, sodium ions are not the only particles that can take up electrons; water molecules can as well, in the following manner.

$$\underset{(l)}{2H_2O} + 2e^- = \underset{(g)}{H_2} + \underset{(aq)}{2OH^-}$$ (reduction, occurring at the cathode

In fact, this is the reaction that occurs because it requires less energy than the reduction of sodium ions.

At the anode, if the concentration of chlorine ions is very low, water molecules are oxidized in preference to chlorine ions.

$$\underset{(l)}{2H_2O} = \underset{(aq)}{4He} + \underset{(g)}{O_2} + 4e^-$$ (oxidation, occurring at the anode)

Thus, if a current is passed through a very dilute solution of sodium chloride, effectively what happens is that water is decomposed into hydrogen and oxygen.

The same result could be achieved by using pure water instead of sodium chloride solution, but in this case the electrolysis would take considerably longer. This is because the water molecules, being neutral, are not attracted to the positive and negative electrodes. We have to wait for their random motion to take them there.

However, in a solution of sodium chloride, the sodium ions "carry" the water molecules to the cathode and the chlorine ions "carry" them to the anode. We shall find out in Chapter 12 how these ions are able to transport the water molecules.

COPPER ELECTROPLATING

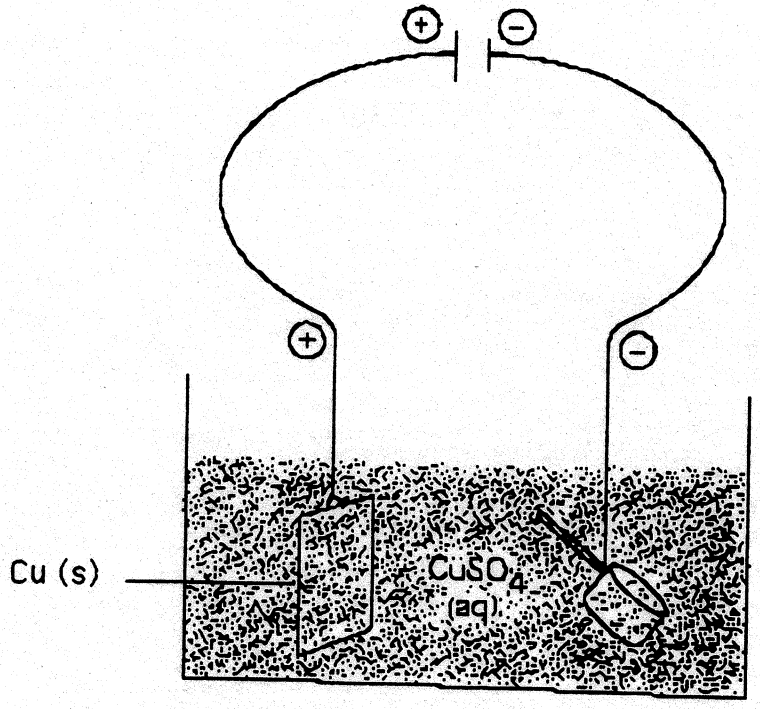


Figure 9.4
Copper electroplating

The metal article, such as a saucepan, to be copper plated is made to be the cathode in a cell. This is shown schematically in Fig. 9.4.

The anode is made of copper and the electrolyte is copper sulfate.

Electrolysis results in copper being evenly deposited on the saucepan, to be copper plated is made to be the cathode in a cell. This is shown schematically in Fig. 9.4.

The anode is made of copper and the electrolyte is copper sulfate.

Electrolysis results in copper being evenly deposited on the saucepan (the cathode) and the copper anode dissolving. The reduction at the cathode is

$$\underset{\substack{(aq)\\ \text{FROM COPPER SULFATE}}}{Cu_2^+} + 2e^- = \underset{(s)}{Cu}$$

and the oxidation at the anode is

$$\underset{\text{FROM ANODE}}{Cu_{(s)}} = Cu^{2+}_{[aq)} + 2e^-$$

For every copper ion Cu^{2+} reduced at the cathode, a copper ion is produced at the anode. The concentration of the copper sulfate solution therefore remains constant.

EFFECT OF ELECTRIC CURRENT ON LIVING TISSUE

Too strong an electric current causes **electrocution**, as in the electric chair used for capital punishment, which results in the heart being stopped.

If a relatively small electric current is applied to the nerve supplying a muscle it causes the muscle to contract.

Muscle contraction is a complex chemical reaction in which physical energy is released. This reaction can also be triggered off by direct application of the electric current to the muscle. The nerve and muscle response to electrical stimulation is sometimes used clinically to determine the extent of damage in a case of paralysis. It is also used to prevent muscles from wasting while the nerve to the muscles is regenerating after an injury.

A fairly recent development of tissue stimulation by electric current is the artificial pacemaker which is surgically implanted to make the heart beat regularly when the normal mechanism has failed, as in **complete heart block** in which the impulse fails to pass from atria to ventricles.

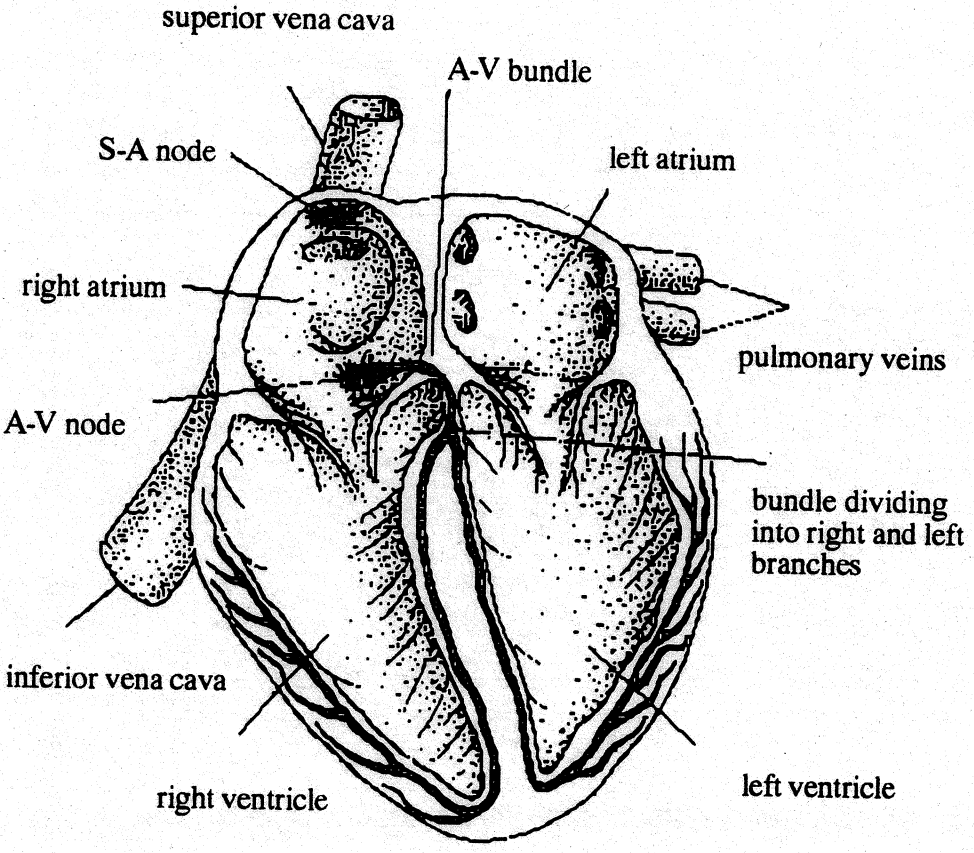
Electrical stimulation is also being used to overcome "**foot drop**" and other forms of muscular paralysis.

Another development is the **defibrillator** used in appropriate cases of heart attack to stop **ventricular fibrillation**, a rapid uncoordinated and ineffectual contraction of the ventricular muscle.

Stopping this irregular contraction allows the normal rhythmical contraction to take place. This rhythm normally emanates from a **pacemaker** of specialized tissue in the right atrium called the **sino-auricular, S-A node** (Fig. 9.5).

The production of the impulse by the pacemaker and the spread of the impulse, producing the orderly wave of muscular contraction involving

first the atria and then the ventricles, are all electrochemical phenomena.



OXYGEN

Our lives depend on oxygen. Cut off our oxygen, and within minutes we die.

Brain cells die within 90 seconds of oxygen deprivation. However, breathing can stop for several minutes without fatal effects. This is because the air spaces in our lungs and the oxyhemoglobin in our blood provide a short-term oxygen reservoir.

Since the reservoir is so quickly used up, it is vital for artificial respiration to be started at the earliest possible moment in respiratory paralysis due to electric shock or in cases of near drowning. Mouth to mouth respiration, the "**kiss of life**," has proved to be by far the most effective method.

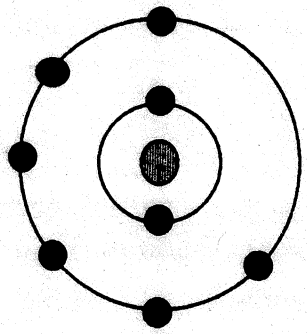
If the heart stops even the short-term oxygen reservoir in lungs and blood is unavailable. There is no blood flow to the brain. So resuscitation has to be started within about a minute. Recently a number of people have had their hearts successfully restarted by cardiac massage or by electrical stimulation.

ATOMIC STRUCTURE

The atomic number of oxygen is 8 and its electron configuration is 2, 6.

This means that the first or K shell is completely filled. The second or L shell, having 6 electrons, is 2 electrons short of the stable octet which is the inert gas configuration present in neon.

This 2 electron gap in its outer valence shell gives oxygen a valence of 2. Diagrammatically the oxygen atom may be represented as:



The valence shell of oxygen is relatively close to the nucleus, shielded from it only by the inner shell of 2 electrons. In addition, the positive charge on the nucleus produced by its 8 protons is relatively high. So if electrons of another atom approach the valence shell they are exposed to a strong nuclear attraction, making oxygen a ready electron acceptor.

Oxygen is therefore highly reactive and a powerful oxidizing agent, especially at the time of release from combination with another atom when it is momentarily in the atomic state.

DISCOVERY AND APPLICATIONS

It is a strange fact that oxygen was discovered by two men quite independently within the space of two years, first in 1772 by Carle Scheele, a poor Swedish apothecary, and then in 1774 by Joseph Priestley, an English nonconformist preacher, who was the first to publish his discovery by several years.

Priestley produced the gas by heating red oxide of mercury, using a magnifying ("burning") glass to focus the sun's rays. He described how "a mouse lived twice as long in the new air as in the same confined volume of common air." He breathed it himself and felt that it lightened his breathing.

Although he recommended its use in medicine, even he might have been surprised at how much it is now used in the operating theater on the anesthetic machine, in the resuscitation and intensive care wards, in the radiotherapy department, in the premature baby unit, in the hospital laboratory, and in the home care of respiratory and cardiac invalids. It is used in aviation medicine, being available on airliners in emergency if the pressurization fails, also in mountaineering, deep-sea diving, and in industry.

For medical use, oxygen is stored at a very high pressure, 120 atmospheres, in steel cylinders. These cylinders should not be exposed to mechanical shocks or to heat.

To release the oxygen in a steady stream and at a safe pressure, a reducing valve must be used. Only a specially made lubricant may be used to grease this reducing valve.

OCCURRENCE

Oxygen composes 21% of the earth's atmosphere by volume (23% by weight). In combined form it is present in water, humans, animals,

plants, and most rocks. The earth's crust is nearly 50% oxygen, considerably more than any other element.

PREPARATION

The preparation of oxygen provides a good example of the way a chemical reaction can be speeded up by a catalyst. Oxygen can be produced simply by heating potassium chlorate.

$$\underset{\text{POTASSIUM}}{2KClO_3\,(s)} = \underset{\text{POTASSIUM}}{2KCl\,(s)} + \underset{\text{OXYGEN}}{3O_2\,(g)}$$

This can be done by placing the potassium chlorate crystals in a test tube and strongly heating it over a Bunsen burner. The crystals crackle and then melt. Only when the temperature is almost high enough to melt the tube is oxygen slowly produced. But if, before heating, a small amount (1 part in 5) of manganese dioxide is added, oxygen is produced rapidly, even before the potassium chlorate melts.

The manganese dioxide is a **catalyst**: It speeds up the reaction but is not itself used up in the process. It can be compared to oil lubricating the mechanism of the reaction and allowing it to proceed with much less effort.

In this example of catalysis the manganese dioxide allows the oxygen atoms to be pulled out of the potassium chlorate molecule without using so much energy in the form of heat. Catalysis is very important in chemistry. Some reactions do not take place at all without a catalyst.

Many chemical reactions in the human body depend on catalysts made of protein, called enzymes.

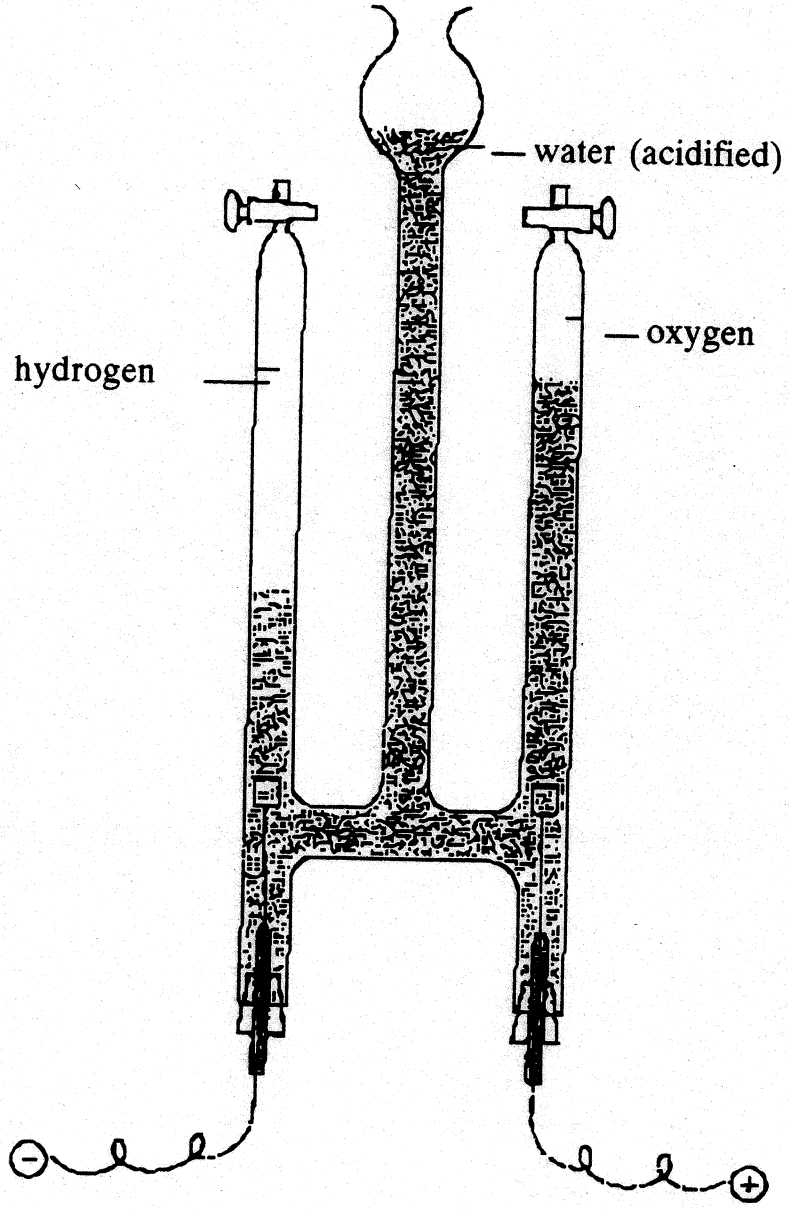
OXYGEN FROM WATER

We saw in Chapter 9 how water molecules can be electrolyzed, or split into their constituent elements by the action of an electric current.

$$\underset{(l)}{2H_2O} \longrightarrow \underset{(g)}{2H_2} + \underset{(g)}{O_2}$$

For the electrolysis of water the type of apparatus illustrated in Fig. 10.1 is suitable.

Figure 10.1
Electrolysis of water



Oxygen comes off at the positive electrode (anode) and hydrogen at the negative electrode (cathode). The electrodes are made of platinum which does not corrode. The volume of hydrogen produced is twice that of oxygen and we see from the equation that the electrolysis gives twice as many hydrogen molecules as oxygen molecules. This illustrates a fundamental law of chemistry known as **Avogadro's law**, which states that equal volumes of gases contain the same number of molecules,

provided that they are at the same temperature and pressure.

OXYGEN FROM AIR

It is from the air that the oxygen supplied to hospitals and to industry is obtained. By a cooling process, similar to that used in a domestic refrigerator, the air is liquefied. From this liquid air, nitrogen boils off at -196°C, leaving behind liquid oxygen which does not boil until the temperature reaches - 183°C.

PROPERTIES

Oxygen is a colorless, odorless and tasteless gas. It has a very strong attraction for electrons and so it is termed very electronegative. So when oxygen combines with other elements it oxidizes them because it gains their electrons wholly or partly. An exception to this is its reaction with fluorine, the most electronegative of all elements.

In this reaction fluorine oxide, F_2O is formed and the fluorine partially gains electrons from oxygen; so fluorine oxidizes oxygen (and oxygen reduces fluorine].

The most important chemical property of oxygen is its ability to support combustion. If a smoldering taper is plunged into a tube of oxygen it bursts into flame. If a patient on oxygen were to light a cigarette he or she could readily set himself or herself on fire. Fire is one of the major hazards of the oxygen tent. Three American astronauts perished by fire in an oxygen atmosphere while testing their space vehicle.

The process of **combustion** is simply the combination of the burning substance with oxygen. Coal for example is very largely carbon.

When carbon burns it combines with the oxygen in the air to form carbon dioxide.

C	+	O_2	=	CO_2
(s)		(g)		(g)
CARBON		OXYGEN		CARBON DIOXIDE

This reaction gives out heat so it is **exothermic**. As a result of giving out heat the temperature is raised. As the temperature rises the reaction takes place more rapidly. So heat is given out more rapidly. Thus, there is a vicious circle which can progress to white heat if there is a sufficient supply of combustible material and oxygen.

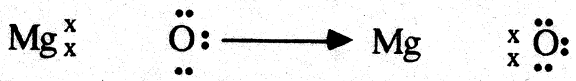
In the domestic heating boiler the temperature is controlled by the air

inlet valve. If this is opened wide a low fire soon bursts into life and the temperature rises.

When magnesium is ignited it burns with a blinding white flame and is oxidized to magnesium oxide.

$$\underset{\text{MAGNESIUM}}{2Mg_{(s)}} + \underset{\text{OXYGEN}}{O_{2(g)}} = \underset{\text{MAGNESIUM OXIDE}}{2MgO_{(s)}}$$

In the process each magnesium atom loses two electrons to an oxygen atom.



When iron rusts it combines with oxygen and the rust is iron oxide.

Noble metals such as platinum and gold are resistant to oxidation by the atmosphere.

Base metals such as sodium and potassium combine readily with oxygen, as can be shown by using the apparatus illustrated in Fig. 10.2. Their oxides combine with water to form alkalis.

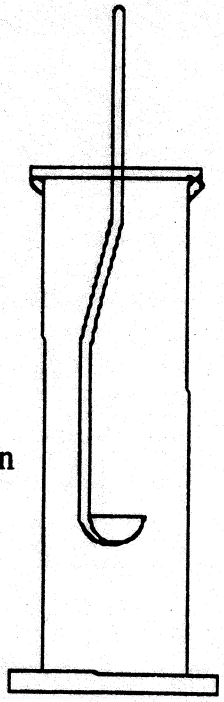


Figure 10.2
Gas jar and deflagrating spoon

Some nonmetals such as sulfur, phosphorus, and carbon are also readily oxidized, but their oxides combine with water to form acids. From this property oxygen gained its name (Gr. oxy, acid, + Gr. gen, producer).

Sulfur burns in oxygen with a blue flame. It can be demonstrated by placing a piece of roll sulfur in a dellagrating spoon, igniting it, putting it in a gas jar filled with oxygen (Fig. 10.2), and keeping the lid closed to contain the choking fumes.

The main product of combustion is sulfur dioxide.

$$\underset{\text{SULFUR}}{S_{(s)}} + \underset{\text{OXYGEN}}{O_{2(g)}} = \underset{\text{SULFUR DIOXIDE}}{SO_{2(g)}}$$

A little sulfur trioxide is also produced.

$$2S_{(s)} + 3O_{2(g)} = \underset{\text{SULFUR TRIOXIDE}}{2SO_{3(g)}}$$

If water is introduced into the jar, both oxides dissolve in it to form acids.

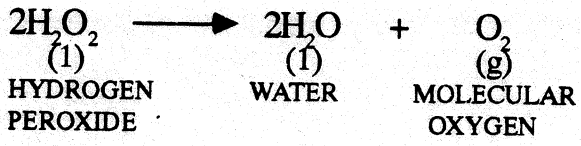
$$\underset{\text{SULFUR DIOXIDE}}{SO_{2(g)}} + \underset{\text{WATER}}{H_2O_{(l)}} = \underset{\text{SULFUROUS ACID}}{H_2SO_{3(aq)}}$$

$$\underset{\text{SULFUR TRIOXIDE}}{SO_{3(g)}} + \underset{\text{WATER}}{H_2O_{(l)}} = \underset{\text{SULFURIC ACID}}{H_2SO_{4(aq)}}$$

The presence of **acid may be shown by adding blue litmus, which turns red.** Most of the acid is sulfurous acid with only a trace of sulfuric acid.

OXIDATION OF BACTERIA

Some antiseptics destroy bacteria by oxidation. Hydrogen peroxide is a well-known example. It is relatively unstable, readily losing an oxygen atom to any suitable nearby substance such as the wall of a bacterium and oxidizing it. So it produces its antiseptic action by virtually burning up the bacteria. Hydrogen peroxide is broken down on heating into water and molecular oxygen.



A "20 volume" solution of hydrogen peroxide is one of such a concentration that 1 cm^3 of it, when heated, will give off 20 cm^3 of oxygen, measured at S.T.P. (**S.T.P. stands for standard temperature and pressure which are 0°C and 760 mm of mercury pressure**).

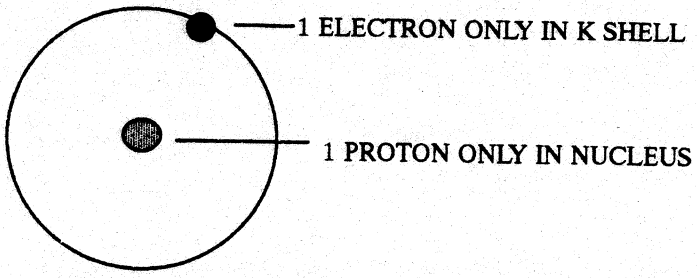
HYDROGEN

Hydrogen is the lightest of all elements and has the smallest atoms. Thermonuclear reaction of hydrogen in the sun (see Chapter 32) provides the energy on which life on earth depends.

Chemically, hydrogen is highly reactive; its reaction with oxygen provides the essential source of energy in our bodies.

ATOMIC STRUCTURE

Hydrogen has the simplest of all atoms. Each atom consists of a single proton around which orbits a single electron.



Unlike the atoms of all other elements the nucleus of hydrogen contains no neutrons. The hydrogen ion H^+ is a hydrogen atom from which the single electron has been removed. It thus consists of only a positively charged proton.

ISOTOPES OF HYDROGEN

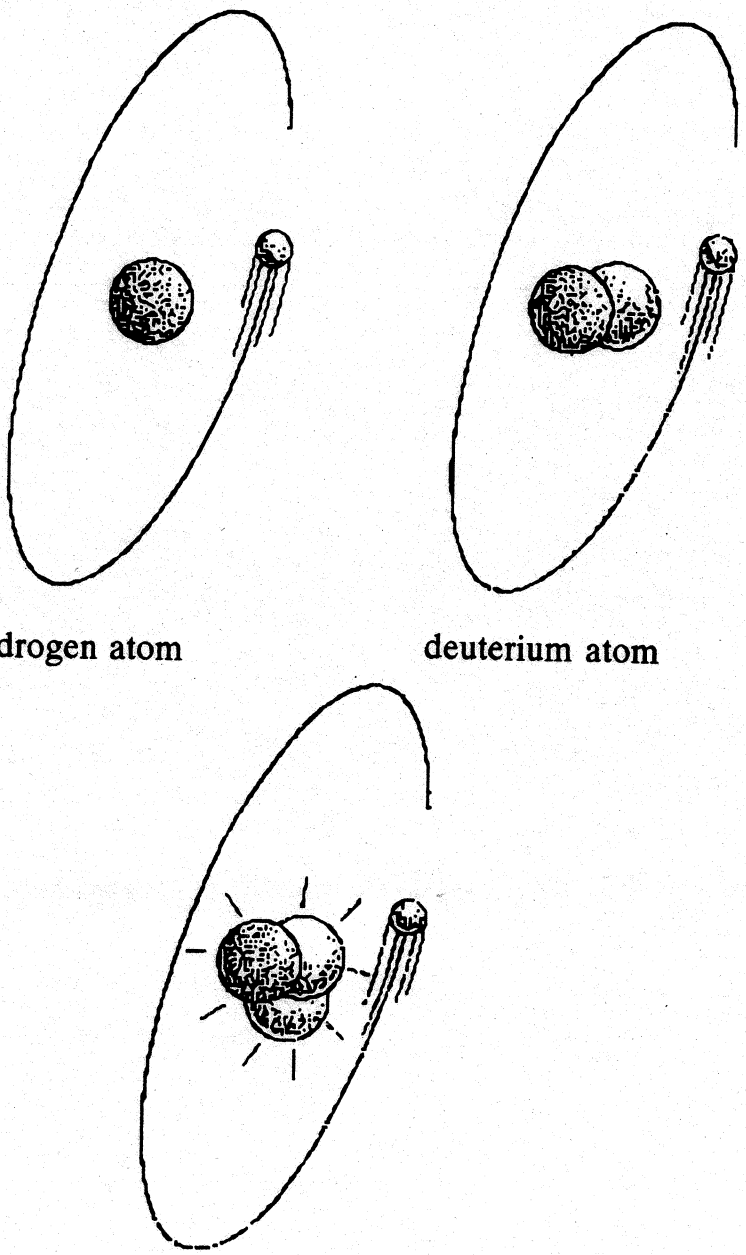
Its isotopes resemble hydrogen in that their atoms contain one proton and one electron, but in addition they also contain 1 or 2 neutrons in the nucleus.

hydrogen = 1 electron + 1 proton

deuterium = 1 electron + 1 proton + 1 neutron

tritium = 1 electron + 1 proton + 2 neutrons

They may be represented diagrammatically as shown in Fig. 11.1.



hydrogen atom deuterium atom

tritium atom (radioactive)

Figure 11.1

DEUTERIUM, D

Deuterium is twice as heavy as hydrogen; its oxide, D_2O is very similar to water, H_2O and is called "**heavy water**" It is demonstrably denser than ordinary water and has freezing and boiling points which are slightly higher. It occurs naturally, ordinary water containing a small

proportion (1 in 6000) of deuterium oxide. The chemical properties of deuterium are very similar to hydrogen but its reactions are somewhat slower.

TRITIUM, T

Tritium is three times as heavy as hydrogen. Unlike deuterium it does not occur naturally. It is made by bombarding deuterium atoms by deuterium ions in a cyclotron.

Tritium has proved very useful in studies on living cells. For example, it can be introduced into the molecule of thymidine to form tritiated thymidine. This is taken up by actively dividing cells in which it can be demonstrated by its radioactivity, using autoradiographs (the radioactivity produces dark spots on photographic film). In this way it is easy to see which are the rapidly dividing cells. This has been of considerable value in cancer research.

DISCOVERY

Hydrogen was first described to the Royal Society, London, by Henry Cavendish in 1766 as "inflammable air." Several years later he showed that a mixture of "inflammable air" and oxygen could be exploded to form water. So he called his newly discovered gas hydrogen which means water producer (Gr. hydro, water, + Gr. gen, producer).

It is probable, however, that hydrogen had been prepared about a century earlier by Robert Boyle, from iron filings and hydrochloric acid.

OCCURRENCE

More than 90% of the universe consists of hydrogen, either as an element or in compounds.

The sun consists mainly of hydrogen and every second 4 million tons of it are converted directly into energy.

A tiny fraction of this sunlight is trapped by the chlorophyll in green plants on earth, providing the energy for all the other living creatures including ourselves, which feed directly or indirectly on green plants.

Not only the sun but also all the other billions of stars are composed mainly of hydrogen. So are the huge interstellar gas clouds.

On earth, however, hydrogen is only the ninth most common element

by weight after oxygen, silicon, aluminium, iron, calcium, sodium, potassium, and magnesium.

Hydrogen is continually escaping from the earth's atmosphere, of which it forms only one part in a million by volume (much less by weight). So free hydrogen is rare except where it has been trapped underground, as in North Sea gas, or released from compounds by man's efforts, as in coal gas (which also contains the highly poisonous carbon monoxide).

Hydrogen is most commonly found on earth in the form of its oxide, water, H_2O which covers much of the earth's surface.

Compounds of hydrogen with carbon alone are called **hydrocarbons**. They are found in coal and petroleum which are derived from plants and creatures of prehistoric times. Examples of hydrocarbons are paraffin, candle grease, and petrol. They must be distinguished from carbohydrates. These are the sugars and starches, which contain oxygen as well as carbon and hydrogen.

Acids are a very important group of substances containing hydrogen. It is hydrogen in the form of the hydrogen ion, H^+ which gives acids their bite. The acidity of a solution depends on the concentration of hydrogen ions. We saw in Chapter 5 how these ions each combine with a molecule of water to form a hydroxonium ion H_3O^+.

PREPARATION

In the laboratory, hydrogen is usually prepared by the action of dilute sulfuric or hydrochloric acid on granulated zinc.

Zn	+	H_2SO_4	=	$ZnSO_4$	+	H_2
(s)		(aq)		(aq)		(g)
ZINC		SULFURIC ACID		ZINC SULFATE		HYDROGEN

A suitable apparatus is illustrated in Fig. 11.2, the acid being introduced through a dropping funnel into a flask containing zinc granules. The hydrogen gas is collected over water in an inverted jar or in a gas syringe. Note that until the air has been blown out of the apparatus the gas collected may be an explosive mixture of hydrogen and air. A small volume collected into a test tube should first be tested. When pure hydrogen is coming over it will burn without exploding.

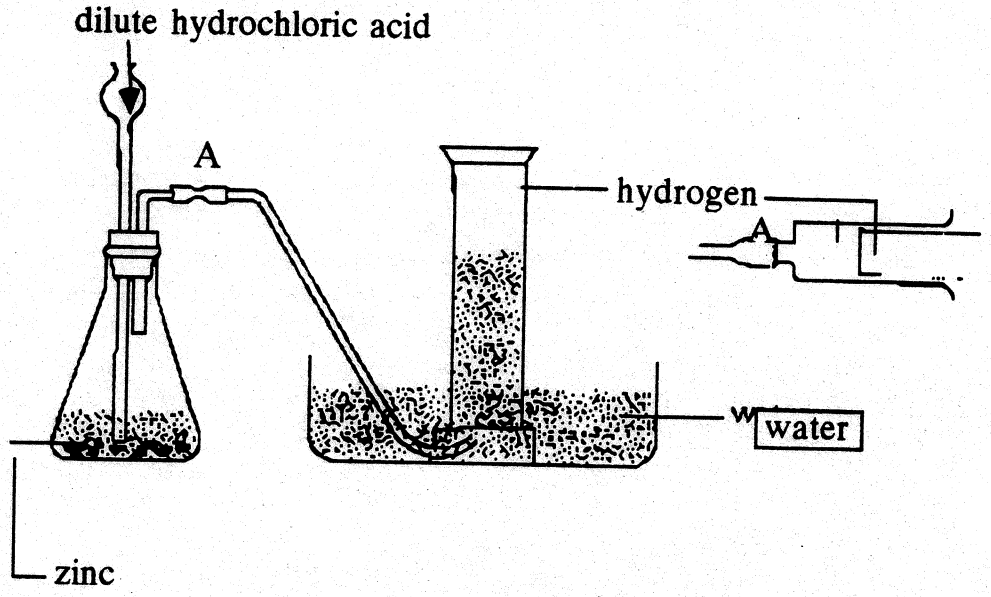


Figure 11.2
Collection of hydrogen over water or, on right, by gas syringe (attached to apparatus at A).

HYDROGEN FROM WATER

BY ELECTROLYSIS: The passage of an electric current through water (slightly acidified to increase its electrical conductivity) causes it to dissociate into hydrogen and oxygen.

$$\underset{(l)}{2H_2O} = \underset{(g)}{2H_2} + \underset{(g)}{O_2}$$

Electrolysis is used commercially for the preparation of hydrogen from solutions of sodium hydroxide or sodium chloride.

BY CHEMICAL METHODS. Several of the baser metals readily displace hydrogen from water. With sodium or potassium the reaction is violent; only a small piece, about the size of a pea, should be used. So much heat is produced in the reaction that the metal melts and shoots across the surface of the water owing to rapid evolution of hydrogen. In the case of potassium, the heat is sufficient to ignite the hydrogen. White hot coke also displaces hydrogen from steam.

$$\underset{\text{COKE}}{\underset{(s)}{C}} + \underset{\text{STEAM}}{\underset{(g)}{H_2O}} = \underset{\text{CARBON MONOXIDE}}{\underset{(g)}{CO}} + \underset{\text{HYDROGEN}}{\underset{(g)}{H_2}}$$

The mixture of carbon monoxide and hydrogen which is formed is known as **water gas**. It is a useful fuel and an industrial source of hydrogen. It is also used in the manufacture of methanol mentioned later in the chapter.

PROPERTIES

Hydrogen gas is the lightest of all elements, being fourteen times lighter than air. Its atomic number is one and its atomic weight is also approximately one, virtually all its mass being related to the single proton.

It was at one time frequently used for filling balloons and airships but was highly dangerous because of its flammability. Helium is now used for airships instead.

Free hydrogen cannot be detected by our senses as it is colorless, odorless and tasteless. It liquefies at -253°C to form a pale blue liquid, the lightest liquid known, being fourteen times lighter than water. When it is cooled only 8° below its boiling point it freezes into solid hydrogen.

Chemically, hydrogen is very reactive. It has a strong attraction for oxygen and chlorine. A jet of hydrogen will burn readily in either gas forming water with oxygen and hydrogen chloride with chlorine.

$$\underset{(g)}{2H_2} + \underset{(g)}{O_2} = \underset{(l)}{2H_2O}$$

$$\underset{(g)}{H_2} + \underset{(g)}{Cl_2} = \underset{(g)}{2HCl}$$

If hydrogen is mixed with oxygen or chlorine and the mixture ignited, the same reactions occur as before, but this time with explosive violence.

Hydrogen combines much less readily with nitrogen, neither exploding nor burning in it. The reaction is a reversible one.

$$\underset{(g)}{N_2} + \underset{(g)}{3H_2} \longleftrightarrow \underset{(g)}{2NH_3}$$

Under ordinary atmospheric conditions the amount of ammonia produced is negligible. But by increasing the pressure to 1000 atmospheres the yield can be increased to about 60%. The speed of the reaction is increased by raising the temperature to 500°C and using catalysts of iron and molybdenum.

The ammonia produced, as in the Haber process, is of considerable importance industrially for making fertilizers such as ammonium sulfate, $(NH_4)2SO_4$ and in the production of nitric acid, HNO_3.

Hydrogen reacts with certain vegetable oils to produce edible fats, such as margarine. This is known as the **"hardening" of oils** and requires a catalyst. Hydrogen is also used in the manufacture of methanol (methyl alcohol) from water gas.

$$\underset{\text{WATER GAS}}{CO_{(g)} + H_{2(g)}} + H_{2(g)} = \underset{\text{METHANOL}}{CH_3OH_{(l)}}$$

Since hydrogen combines with oxygen so readily it can be used to free metals from their oxides. Molybdenum and tungsten are manufactured in this way.

$$\underset{\substack{\text{MOLYBDENUM}\\\text{OXIDE}}}{MoO_{3(s)}} + 3H_{2(g)} = \underset{\text{MOLYBDENUM}}{Mo_{(s)}} + 3H_2O_{(l)}$$

In all of the above reactions hydrogen is a **reducing agent** because it partially loses its electrons to other elements, namely oxygen, chlorine, nitrogen, and carbon. It can also act as an oxidizing agent and gain electrons as in the formation of sodium and potassium hydrides.

$$2Na_{(s)} + H_{2(g)} = 2NaH_{(s)}$$

This occurs when sodium is heated to 400°C in a stream of hydrogen.

Sodium hydride is an ionic compound Na^+H^-. It is a white crystalline substance and is very unstable, reacting immediately with water to release hydrogen.

$$H_2O_{(l)} + NaH_{(s)} = NaOH_{(aq)} + H_{2(g)}$$

HYDROGEN IN THE BODY CHEMISTRY

Hydrogen compounds are widely distributed in cells and body fluids.

The oxide, water, is so important that we treat it separately in Chapter 12. The part played by hydrogen ions in body acidity will be considered in Chapter 13. In the many organic compounds which provide the body's building bricks, communication systems, fuel supplies, and so

forth, attention is so frequently focused on the carbon atoms that the more numerous hydrogen atoms tend to be overlooked. Sometimes, however, these hydrogen atoms make a major contribution, particularly in energy production.

We have seen how the combination of hydrogen with oxygen to form water provides so much energy that if the proportions are approximately right, a mixture of these gases is explosive

$$2H_2 + O_2 = 2H_2O + \text{energy}$$

The energy produced is very large, 239 kilojoules for each mole of H_2O formed.

This reaction, suitably controlled, is the essential source of the body's energy.

As we have already seen, it occurs inside cells in the mitochondria.

The oxygen on the left-hand side of the equation is supplied in aqueous solution from atmospheric oxygen via the lungs and red cell hemoglobin.

The hydrogen is provided not as the free element but attached to a complex molecule NAD (nicotinamide-adenine dinucleotide) or NADP (nicotinamide-adenine dinucleotide phosphate), which combines reversibly with hydrogen to form NADH or NADPH.

In this combined form the hydrogen does not react with the oxygen directly but through a number of intermediate steps known as the **respiratory chain**. These steps involve a series of enzymes such as flavoproteins and cytochromes situated in the mitochondria.

The energy is liberated not as heat but as chemical energy stored in the energy-rich compound, ATP (adenosine triphosphate). In this form, it is readily available to be converted into energy, such as the physical energy of muscular contraction.

WATER

Water is one of the commonest chemical substances in the world. It is essential for all forms of life on this planet and comprises about 70% of our body weight.

Approximately 20% of our weight is the water which is outside our cells, called **extracellular water**. Part of this is in our blood but most of it is in the fluid which surrounds our tissue cells, known as the **tissue fluid**.

About 50% of our body weight is water situated inside our cells and called **intracellular water**.

We are continually losing water from our lungs in our breath, from our skin as sweat which may be imperceptible, from our kidneys in urine and from our alimentary tract in feces.

Normally our water loss is counterbalanced by our water intake in the form of drink and food. Even solid food contains much water, and succulent fruit contains well over 90% water.

In some diseases there is excessive water loss, for example in the urine of a diabetic or in the diarrhea which accompanies food poisoning, dysentery and cholera, also typhoid after the initial stage of constipation. In all these conditions the body becomes depleted of water and the patient is dehydrated. In dehydration it is the extracellular water which is lost. Loss of intracellular water is incompatible with life. Replacement of lost water, particularly in infants who have so little reserve, may well be a life-saving measure.

NATURAL WATER

On this planet there is water everywhere. It occurs in the air as water vapor (rain) and snow; in the oceans and inland waters as liquid water, icebergs and glaciers; and in many rocks and minerals of the earth's crust as water of crystallization (see page 77).

In its liquid state the purest form of natural water is the rain water of country districts. Even this is not absolutely pure. It contains dissolved oxygen, nitrogen, and carbon dioxide from the atmosphere. During thunderstorms it dissolves the nitric acid produced by the electrical

discharges. In towns, it also contains dust, soot, and oxides of sulfur that are produced when coal is burnt.

The carbon dioxide dissolved in rain water makes it a very weak acid.

H_2O	+	CO_2	=	H_2CO_3
(l)		(g)		(aq)
WATER		CARBON DIOXIDE		CARBONIC ACID

After the rain water falls on to the ground it passes into the soil and eventually gathers into streams and rivers. From the soil and rocks it dissolves substances which are soluble either in pure water or in a dilute solution of acid.

So the impurities present in water are determined by the types of soluble substances in the soil and rocks over which it has passed. Commonly, these are salts such as chlorides, carbonates, bicarbonates, and sulfates of sodium, calcium, magnesium, and iron. The nature of salts will be discussed in the next chapter.

SOFT AND HARD WATER

Soft water lathers readily with soap. Rain water is an example. With **hard water** considerably more soap is needed before a lather is obtained.

An example is the hard water from a limestone district containing calcium bicarbonate. The salts of calcium, magnesium and iron cause water to be hard because they react with soap to form an insoluble precipitate. Soap is sodium stearate, represented for simplicity as Na"St".

2Na"St"	+	$Ca(HCO_3)2$	=	$Ca"St"_2$	+	$2NaHCO_3$
(s)		(aq]		(s)		(aq)
SODIUM STEARATE		CALCIUM BICARBONATE		CALCIUM STEARATE (INSOLUBLE PRECIPITATE)		SODIUM BICARBONATE

It can be seen that the calcium from the bicarbonate replaces the sodium in soap to form calcium stearate which precipitates and forms a scum. Only when enough soap has been used to remove all the calcium as insoluble calcium stearate is it possible to start obtaining a lather. Sometimes the hardness of water can be removed by boiling it. This is called **temporary hardness**. If boiling does not remove it, it is called **permanent hardness**.

Temporary hardness is due to the presence of calcium or magnesium bicarbonate in the water. If the water is boiled the bicarbonate breaks down.

$$\underset{\substack{(aq)\\ \text{CALCIUM}\\ \text{BICARBONATE}}}{Ca(HCO_3)_2} = \underset{\substack{(s)\\ \text{CALCIUM}\\ \text{CARBONATE}}}{CaCO_3} + \underset{\substack{(l)\\ \text{WATER}}}{H_2O} + \underset{\substack{(g)\\ \text{CARBON}\\ \text{DIOXIDE}}}{CO_2}$$

Carbon dioxide is given off as gas and the calcium carbonate precipitates, as "fur" in a kettle. When this occurs the water becomes soft and lathers easily.

Permanent hardness is due to the presence of calcium or magnesium sulfate in the water. It is resistant to boiling.

Both temporary and permanent hardness may be removed by passing the water over a substance called sodium zeolite used in water softeners. This exchanges sodium ions for calcium or magnesium ions.

$$\underset{\substack{(s)\\ \text{SODIUM}\\ \text{ZEOLITE}}}{2NaZ} + \underset{\substack{(aq)\\ \text{CALCIUM}\\ \text{ION}}}{Ca^{2+}} \longleftrightarrow \underset{\substack{(s)\\ \text{CALCIUM}\\ \text{ZEOLITE}}}{CaZ_2} + \underset{\substack{(aq)\\ \text{SODIUM}\\ \text{IONS}}}{2Na^+}$$

So the calcium and magnesium ions in the water are replaced by sodium ions and the water is made soft. The above reaction is reversible, as denoted by the $\longleftrightarrow$ sign: the calcium or magnesium zeolite can be converted back to sodium zeolite, the active softening ingredient, simply by flushing it through with a solution of sodium chloride (common salt, NaCl) which provides sodium ions.

$$\underset{\substack{(s)\\ \text{CALCIUM}\\ \text{ZEOLITE}}}{CaZ_2} + \underset{\substack{(aq)\\ \text{SODIUM IONS}\\ \text{(FROM BRINE)}}}{2Na^+} \quad \underset{\substack{(s)\\ \text{SODIUM}\\ \text{ZEOLITE}}}{2NaZ} + \underset{\substack{(aq)\\ \text{CALCIUM}\\ \text{ION}}}{Ca^{2+}}$$

Thus exhausted zeolite can be recharged in brine (a NaCl solution) overnight, ready for use again in the morning. Sodium zeolite, represented for simplicity as NaZ, is sodium aluminum silicate ($NaAlSi_2O_6$).

The advantages of soft water for washing are that less soap is needed, a better lather is obtained and no scum (calcium or magnesium stearate) is produced. Because less soap or detergent is needed, the skin of the hands suffers less from washing up or scrubbing up.

For laundries, soft water is much more economical in soap or detergent than hard water. For heating systems soft water leaves no "scale" of calcium or magnesium carbonates in the pipes, radiators or boilers which, if hard water is used, renders them progressively more inefficient, for the scale is a poor conductor of heat and the flow of water is

impaired.

DRINKING WATER

There is no need to soften drinking water. In fact it could be harmful, for in areas where the water is soft a higher incidence of heart disease has been noted.

The small amounts of salts present in hard water are probably beneficial and may give the water a pleasant flavor. Very soft water can dissolve lead from lead pipes and contribute to slowly cumulative lead poisoning.

Water containing nitrates is generally unsuitable for drinking. It is likely to be contaminated by sewage or decaying animal matter. Also, nitrates are reduced to nitrites by bacteria in the gut. These react with hemoglobin forming methemoglobin which is unable to transport oxygen.

Drinking water should be free from bacteria. They may be removed by filtration through sand or killed, for instance, by chlorine.

The most common way in which water is made safe for drinking is by chlorination. For small quantities of water, tincture of iodine may be used: 3 drops to 1 pint of water for 1 hour. The iodine can then be removed by 1 to 2 drops of sodium thiosulfate solution, to make the water palatable.

DISTILLED WATER

When water is boiled, salts or other dissolved solids are left behind and if the steam is condensed and collected (see Fig. 12.1) it provides water which is sufficiently pure for the majority of purposes where chemically pure water is required.

De-ionized water is similar, the salts being removed by passing the water through an ion-exchange resin. Hydrogen ions, H^+, in the resin are exchanged for positive ions, such as Ca^{2+}, that are in the water. The resin also contains hydroxyl ions, OH^- and these are exchanged for negative ions, such as Cl^-. The hydrogen and hydroxyl ions combine to form water.

$$\underset{(aq)}{H^+} + \underset{(aq)}{OH^-} = \underset{(l)}{H_2O}$$

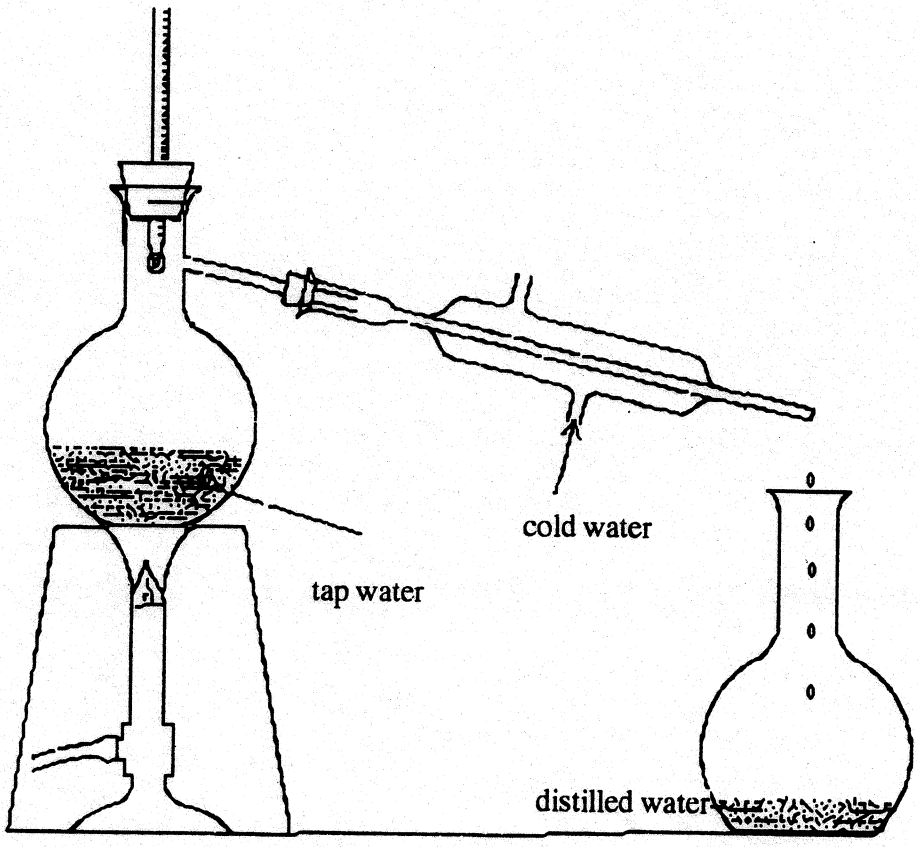


Figure 12.1
Distillation: the water is evaporated by heat and the vapor condensed by cooling.

Water may be further purified by repeated distillation. To obtain very pure water, distilled water is partially frozen and the ice crystals collected. Soluble impurities remain in the unfrozen water.

STERILE WATER

The concentration of chlorine (0.2 ppm) used to make water safe to drink is sufficient to kill off organisms of the coliform, typhoid or cholera type. Some spore-bearing organisms may, however, survive in

tap water. These are harmless as far as drinking is concerned but the water cannot be considered as sterile for injection purposes. In addition the taps themselves may harbor organisms, such as mycobacteria. When sterile water is required for injections or parenteral infusions it is usually heated in an autoclave at a pressure of 15 lb/in^2 (1.05 kg/cm^2) for 15 minutes (at 121°C). This is sufficient to kill all known organisms.

PROPERTIES OF WATER

Pure water is an odorless, tasteless liquid. Small amounts of water and ice appear colorless, but light which has penetrated through much water or ice is blue. A beautiful example of this is in the "Blue Grotto" on Capri Island. Daylight enters the cave through an underwater opening and the grotto is bathed in an eerie blue light.

The boiling point of water at 100°C and its freezing point at O°C, at 1 atmosphere pressure, are used as the standards for calibrating thermometers. Water is an unusual liquid in having its maximum density at a temperature 4°C higher than its freezing point. At this temperature 1 cm^2 weighs 1 g. When water cools below 4°C it becomes less dense. And so when the temperature nears its freezing point the coldest water is on the surface. This is the reason why ice forms on the surface of a pond and not at its bottom, a matter of some importance for aquatic creatures and for us. For if ice formed at the bottom, melting would be a much slower process; much more ice in this world would never melt at all.

Water is a powerful solvent, particularly for acids, bases and salts (see Chapter 13). A number of salts will not form crystals unless they are combined with a definite proportion of water, known as water of crystallization, for example, magnesium sulfate crystals $MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$ (Epsom salts) and nickel chloride crystals $NiCl_2 \cdot 6H^2O$.

Many chemical reactions will not take place except in the presence of at least some water. The chemical reactions in the human body all take place completely immersed in a watery solution.

MEANING OF FORMULA H_2O

Do water's properties fit in with a formula of H_2O? It is frequently represented like this, but a molecule consisting of two atoms of hydrogen and one of oxygen has a molecular weight of only 18.

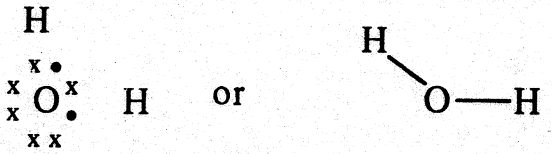
A substance with such a light molecule should be a gas at room tempera-

ture. Hydrogen sulfide, H_2S has a molecular weight of 34, and it is certainly a gas, right down to temperatures well below the freezing point of water. How then can water, a liquid, have a formula of H_2O?

The explanation lies in the shape of the water molecule and in its ability to link with neighboring molecules.

SHAPE OF A WATER MOLECULE

When hydrogen combines with oxygen to form water, the bonds between the atoms are of covalent type.



In the formula on the right the bonds are represented by lines. The angle between the two bonds is just over a right angle (104.5°). This odd shape provides part of the explanation of the unusual properties of water.

LINKING OF WATER MOLECULES

In a water molecule the positive electrical charge on the nucleus of the oxygen atom is eight times greater than that on each of the hydrogen atoms. So the negatively charged electrons are attracted very slightly away from the hydrogen atoms towards the oxygen atoms. This produces a weak positive charge on the hydrogen atoms and a weak negative charge on the oxygen atom. We say that the water molecule is **polarized** since it contains positive and negative "poles."

As a result the negatively charged oxygen atom is attracted to positively charged hydrogen atom of a neighboring molecule. This is example of the hydrogen bond (Chapter 5). It links together groups of 3 or 4 water molecules to form one large molecular structure. In these groups the slightly positive hydrogen atoms of one H_2O molecule are attracted to the nonbonding electron-pairs in the oxygen atom of another H_2O molecule which gives a rather open structure to the grouping (see Fig. 12.4).

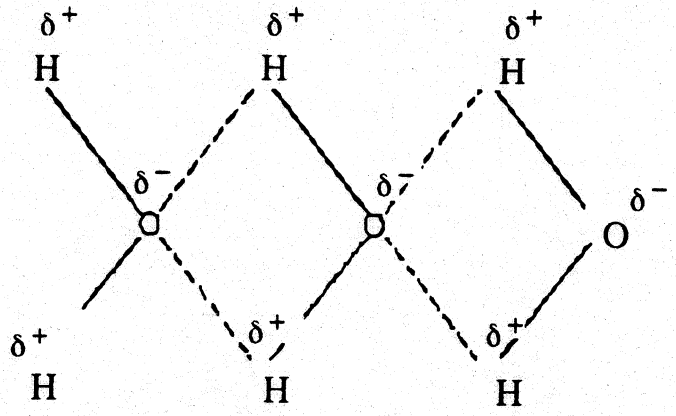


Figure 12.4 Hydrogen bonding between water molecules.

It is these large molecular structures which account for water being a liquid and not a gas at ordinary temperatures.

As water is heated the energy imparted to the water molecules tends to disrupt the relatively weak hydrogen bonds, until at its boiling point water breaks down completely into individual molecules of H_2O to form gaseous steam.

The most densely packed molecular structure of water is at 4°C. Below this temperature, the groups of H_2O molecules grow bigger. Because these groups have an open structure the density of water decreases as the groups grow.

In ice all the H_2O molecules are hydrogen-bonded to form one gigantic grouping. Ice is therefore less dense than liquid water and so it floats.

Another important consequence of the polarization of water is that water molecules are weakly attracted to dissolved ions.

You may recall from Chapter 9 that sodium and chlorine ions carry water molecules to the electrodes during the electrolysis of sodium chloride solution. They are able to do this because each sodium ion (Na^2) attracts the slightly negative oxygen atoms of water molecules and each chlorine ion (Cl^-), attracts the slightly positive hydrogen atoms. Thus the ions are surrounded by a "sphere" of water molecules (Fig. 12.5).

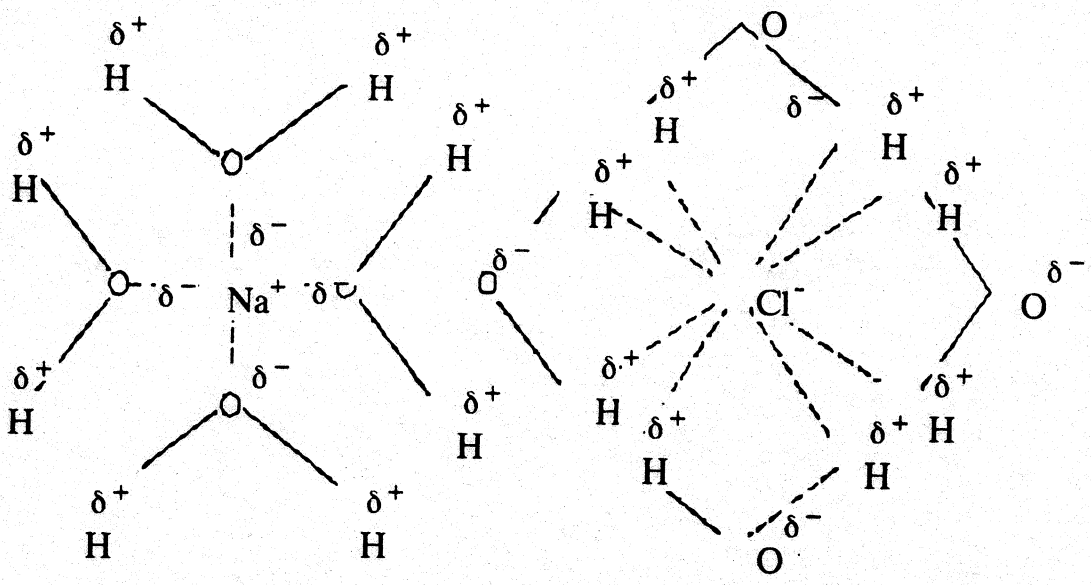


Figure 12.5
Sodium and chlorine ions surrounded by water molecules.

In Chapter 11 it was stated that a little acid accelerates the electrolysis of water. It does so for the same reason that sodium chloride does. The ions furnished by the acid (H^+ and SO_4^{2-} ions in the case of sulfuric acid, H_2SO_4) carry the water molecules to the electrodes.

This attraction of water molecules for ions also explains why water is a good solvent for most ionic compounds. When a substance dissolves, its particles (ions or molecules) must mix thoroughly with the solvent molecules. If the particles are attracted to, and consequently surrounded by, molecules of solvent then thorough mixing is made possible.

CHAPTER 13

SALTS, ACIDS, AND BASES

The salts dissolved in our body water are as essential to life as the water itself. The severe loss of fluid from the gut in cholera, from the kidneys in diabetes or from the skin in heat exhaustion also involves a severe loss of salts. In the treatment of these conditions it is vital to replace the salts as well as the water.

Chemically the salts dissolved in our blood and tissue fluid are very similar to those found in seawater.

The concentration of the salts in the sea has been gradually increasing over the ages. In inland seas such as the Dead Sea and the Great Salt Lake in Utah, evaporation has resulted in the concentration of the salts being four to eight times that in the open ocean, so strong that fish cannot survive in it.

In the open seas the concentration of salts has also been increasing, although more slowly.

Millions of years ago when the first living creatures appeared on earth the concentration of salts in the seas was much weaker than it is now. It was practically the same as that still found today in our blood and tissue fluid. So our cells are bathed by a salt solution much like that of the seas in prehistoric time when the first single-celled creatures (protozoa) were formed.

The salt present in greatest amount, both in our body fluid and in the sea, is sodium chloride NaCl or common salt. The chemical symbol for sodium Na, is derived from natrium, the medieval Latin name for sodium. There are also salts of potassium, K (L. kalium), calcium, Ca, and magnesium, Mg. To understand the chemistry of salts we must first discuss acids and bases.

ACIDS

We have all had some contact with acids, such as the sulfuric acid in car batteries or the hydrochloric acid from our stomachs. Characteristically, acids have a sour taste and tend to burn the skin. They can dissolve fabrics and have often been known to make holes in nylons. They can also corrode metal, as you may have noticed if you have had a leaking car battery. They react with carbonates and bicarbonates, giving off

carbon dioxide, and they turn blue litmus red.

These are typical acidic properties, but acids behave in this way only if they are dissolved in a suitable solvent, usually water. The reason for this is that the characteristic properties of acids are due to the proton (that is, the hydrogen ion H^+) which is unable to exist on its own, under normal conditions. It has to attach itself to a suitable molecule, for example, H_2O. Thus, when the gas, hydrogen chloride, is dissolved in water it gives protons to the water molecules

$$HCl + H_2O = H_3O^+ + Cl^-$$

The solution formed is known as hydrochloric acid. Sulfuric acid behaves in a similar fashion

$$H_2SO_4 + 2H_2O = 2H_3O^+ + SO_4^{2-}$$

Acids are therefore givers of protons, that is proton donors.

You can see that hydrochloric acid and sulfuric acid have an ion in common, namely H_3O^+. This is a protonated water molecule which we met earlier in Chapter 5. You may remember that it is called the **hydroxonium ion** and that its structure is $H_2O \longrightarrow H^+$, a dative covalent bond linking the proton to the oxygen of the water molecule.

It is the hydroxonium ion that confers on aqueous solutions of acids their typical properties.

Sulfuric, hydrochloric and nitric acids are strong proton donors and are therefore said to be strong acids.

By contrast, acetic acid is a weak proton donor, that is, a weak acid.

Only a small fraction of acetic acid molecules are able to protonate water molecules, whereas all the dissolved hydrogen chloride molecules are successful in this respect. This means that a solution of acetic acid contains a smaller concentration of hydroxonium ions than an equimolar solution (that is, one containing the same number of moles per liter) of hydrochloric acid. In other words, the acidic properties of the acetic acid solution will be less pronounced than those of the hydrochloric acid.

If hydrogen chloride is dissolved in a liquid that will not readily accept protons, for instance, glacial acetic acid (100% acetic acid), then the solution will contain only a small concentration of protonated solvent,

because only a small proportion of hydrogen chloride molecules will be successful in forcing protons on to solvent molecules.

$$HCl + \underset{\text{ACETIC ACID}}{C_2H_4O_2} \longleftrightarrow \underset{\text{PROTONATED ACETIC ACID}}{C2H_3O_2^+} + Cl^-$$

In this case it is the $C_2H_5O_2^+$ ion that confers acidic properties on the solution, and because their concentration is low, the acidic properties will not be as marked as they are in an aqueous solution of hydrogen chloride.

It follows that hydrogen chloride is a weaker acid when dissolved in acetic acid than when it is dissolved in water.

If it is dissolved in a solvent such as toluene which will not accept protons at all, then there will be no protonated solvent molecules produced, and consequently the solution will not be acidic.

We see, therefore, that <u>whether or not a substance behaves as an acid depends entirely on the nature of the solvent</u>.

When writing equations to represent the dissociation of acids, it is quite common to omit the solvent molecules and to represent the protonated solvent simply by H^+. This is because the solvent merely acts as a "vehicle" for the proton without affecting its chemistry. Thus the dissociations of hydrogen chloride and sulfuric acid in a solvent are represented simply as

$$HCl = H^+ + Cl^- \quad \text{and} \quad H_2SO_4 = 2H^+ + SO_4^{2-}$$

BASES

These are substances that accept protons. Three common examples are ammonia, the hydroxyl ion, and the oxide ion. They accept protons as indicated in the following equations:

$$\underset{\text{AMMONIA}}{NH_3} + H_3O^+ = NH_4^+ + H_2O$$

$$\underset{\text{HYDROXYL ION}}{OH^-} + H_3O^+ = 2H_2O$$

$$\underset{\text{OXIDE ION}}{O^{2-}} + 2H_3O^+ = 3H_2O$$

The term base is also used for compounds that contain hydroxyl or oxide ions, for example, copper(II) hydroxide, and magnesium oxide, MgO.

The alkalis form an important class of bases. These are simply water-soluble bases; common examples are sodium hydroxide, NaOH, potassium hydroxide, KOH, ammonium hydroxide, NH_4OH, and calcium hydroxide, $Ca(OH)_2$.

Alkalis turn red litmus blue and neutralize acids; that is, convert hydroxonium ions into water.

$$H_3O^+ + OH^- = 2H_2O$$

or more simply

$$H^+ + OH^- = H_2O$$

The characteristic properties of alkalis are due to the hydroxyl ion OH^-. In a neutral solution the concentrations of hydroxonium and hydroxyl ions are equal.

pH METER

The concentration of hydroxonium ions is a measure of the acidity of an aqueous solution. This concentration can be measured directly by using an electrical instrument called a pH meter. The liquid to be measured is placed in the apparatus and the pH value is recorded on a meter.

A pH of 4 means that the concentration of hydroxonium ions is 10^{-4} moles per liter, or 1/10,000 moles per liter.

A solution with a pH of 1 contains 10^{-1} or-1/10 moles of H_3O^+ per liter.

Thus the lower the pH, the greater the acidity. The degree of acidity or alkalinity of a fluid, that is urine or blood, is often referred to as its **reaction**.

A neutral solution contains 10^{-7} moles of H_3O^+ per liter and therefore has a pH of 7. A solution with an alkaline reaction has a pH greater than 7; one with an acidic reaction has a pH less than 7.

With the introduction of the pH meter, described above, it has become possible to measure the reaction of blood with great accuracy. Using this instrument it has been found that our blood is kept constantly at a pH of 7.35 to 7.42. This is slightly on the alkaline side of neutrality. Only in conditions of sufficient severity to endanger life does the pH fall outside this narrow normal range.

Increase of the pH above 7.42 occurs in alkalosis, for example, from severe vomiting, when there is loss of large quantities of hydrochloric acid, HCl from the stomach, or from excessive alkali therapy which can happen in the treatment of peptic ulcer.

Decrease of the pH below 7.35 occurs in acidosis for example in respiratory failure when the lungs fail to expel carbon dioxide, CO_2 rapidly enough to prevent the carbonic acid, H_2CO_3 level in the blood from rising, or in diabetic coma when excessive acids are produced by tissue respiration due to a deficiency of insulin which is essential for the normal combustion of glucose by the tissues.

The constancy of the blood pH in health is maintained by buffer systems. When there is a tendency for the pH to fall (that is, an increase in acidity with a rise in hydrogen ion concentration) the respiratory center is stimulated so that more carbon dioxide is expelled, resulting in a lowering of the carbonic acid concentration in the blood and a corresponding rise in pH (that is, an increase in alkalinity).

Another buffering system is provided by the kidneys which, provided they are healthy, secrete a more acid urine if there is a tendency to acidosis and a more alkaline urine if there is a tendency to alkalosis.

The lungs provide a very quick reaction to change in pH; the kidneys provide a slower control mechanism.

In severe kidney diseases too much acid urine may be produced, resulting in renal alkalosis; sometimes too much alkaline urine may be produced, resulting in renal acidosis.

Inadequate gaseous exchange by the lungs causes respiratory acidosis, overbreathing causes respiratory alkalosis.

Salts are ionic compounds other than acids and bases. They can be made by replacing the hydrogen of an acid by a metal. Thus, magnesium sulfate, $MgSO_4$, Epsom salts, can be prepared by adding magnesium to

sulfuric acid.

$$\underset{(s)}{Mg} + \underset{(aq)}{H_2SO_4} = \underset{(aq)}{MgSO_4} + \underset{(g)}{H_2}$$

The hydrogen of the sulfuric acid is replaced by magnesium giving the salt, magnesium sulfate. Hydrogen gas is also formed and bubbles out of the solution causing it to effervesce.

It would be extremely dangerous to prepare sodium sulfate in this way; adding sodium to sulfuric acid causes an explosive reaction. In this case, then, sodium hydroxide or sodium carbonate are added to the acid.

$$\underset{\substack{(aq)\\ \text{SODIUM}\\ \text{HYDROXIDE}}}{2NaOH} + \underset{(aq)}{H_2SO_4} = \underset{(aq)}{Na_2SO_4} + \underset{(l)}{2H_2O}$$

$$\underset{\substack{(s)\\ \text{SODIUM}\\ \text{CARBONATE}}}{Na_2CO_3} + \underset{(aq)}{H_2SO_4} = \underset{(aq)}{Na_2SO_4} + \underset{(l)}{H_2O} + \underset{(g)}{CO_2}$$

Again, the hydrogen of the acid is replaced by a metal, sodium, to form a sulfate. It is possible to make two kinds of salt from it: sulfates and bisulfates.

Sodium sulfate, Na_2SO_4, is prepared by replacing all of the hydrogen of sulfuric acid by sodium. However, if only half the hydrogen is replaced we make sodium bisulfate, $NaHSO_4$.

$$NaOH + H_2SO_4 = NaHSO_4 + H_2O$$

Another acid having two salts is carbonic acid, the weak acid formed when carbon dioxide is dissolved in water.

$$\underset{(l)}{H_2O} + \underset{\substack{(g)\\ \text{CARBON}\\ \text{DIOXIDE}}}{CO_2} = \underset{\substack{(aq)\\ \text{CARBONIC}\\ \text{ACID}}}{H_2CO_3}$$

Carbonic acid has also two replaceable hydrogen atoms per molecule. So it can react with sodium hydroxide to form two different kinds of salt: sodium carbonate, Na_2CO_3 and sodium bicarbonate, $NaHCO_3$.

Carbon dioxide, carbonic acid and its salts play an important part in

keeping the acid-base balance of our blood constant.

NORMAL SALTS AND ACID SALTS

The salts formed by replacing all the replaceable hydrogen of an acid are called **normal salts**. Those formed by replacing only part of the replacement hydrogen are called **acid salts**.

We can see then that all acids can form normal salts, but only those with two or more replaceable hydrogen atoms per molecule can form acid salts.

The term "acid salt" is only a classification; such a salt does not necessarily give an acidic solution. Thus the acid salt, sodium bicarbonate, $NaHCO_3$. gives a weakly alkaline solution. Examples of normal and acid salts are given in the Table IV.

Note, that of the four hydrogen atoms in the acetic acid molecule, CH_3COOH, only one is replaceable by a metal.

Acetic acid, therefore, forms only one kind of salt, a normal salt which is called an **acetate**.

ELECTROLYTES

Acids, bases and salts are all electrolytes. An **electrolyte** is a substance which when melted or dissolved in water conducts electricity.

The salts in our blood are often referred to as the **serum (or plasma) electrolytes**.

Common salt, sodium chloride, is an example of an electrolyte. There is really no such thing as a molecule of sodium chloride. A crystal of salt consists of equal numbers of positively charged sodium ions and negatively charged chlorine ions, packed tightly together (see Fig. 5.3).

ACID	FORMULA	NUMBER OF REPLACEABLE HYDROGEN ATOMS PER MOLECULE	FORMULA OF SODIUM SALTS	NAME	TYPE OF SALT
hydrochloric	HCl	1	$NaCl$	sodium chloride	normal
nitric	HNO_3	1	$NaNO_3$	sodium nitrate	normal
sulfuric	H_2SO_4	2	Na_2SO_4	sodium sulfate	normal
			$NaHSO_4$	sodium bisulfate	acid
carbonic	H_2CO_3	2	Na_2CO_3	sodium carbonate	normal
			$NaHCO_3$	sodium bicarbonate	acid
phosphoric	H_3PO_4	3	Na_3PO_4	sodium phosphate	normal
			Na_2HPO_4	sodium monohydrogen phosphate	acid
			NaH_2PO_4	sodium dihydrogen phosphate	acid
acetic	CH_3COOH	1	CH_3COONa	sodium acetate	normal

Table IV. Normal and Acid Salts

When salt is dissolved in water the sodium ions and the chlorine ions move about almost independently of each other.

The ions of the electrolytes in the blood move about similarly and the concentration of each type of ion is maintained at a separate level.

BLOOD ELECTROLYTES

The main electrolyte ions in the blood are as follows:

Cations or positive ions	sodium	Na^+	133-144 mmol/liter (m.eq./liter)
	potassium	K^+	3.5-5.5 mmol/liter (m.eq./liter)
Anions or negative ions	chlorine	Cl^-	96-106 mmol/liter (m.eq./liter)
	bicarbonate	HCO_3^-	23-31 mmol/liter (m.eq./liter) [adults] 18-23 mmol/liter (m.eq./liter) [children]

The concentrations are expressed in millimoles per liter. This is now the recommended method of expressing concentration so as to represent clearly the relative proportion of each of the different ions.

For the electrolytes, the levels are numerically the same as for the obsolescent term milli-equivalents per liter.

Estimation of the electrolytes is of great importance in cases of **dehydration**, for example, from diarrhea, vomiting, burns or excessive sweating, so that when the lost fluid is replaced, each of the various ions may be maintained at the correct level.

Their estimation is equally important in cases of fluid retention which causes waterlogging of the tissues, known as **edema**; this is seen in heart failure, kidney failures,, liver failure, and starvation.

The electrolyte balance is also upset when the function of certain endocrine glands is disturbed, for example, diabetic ketosis (failure of the islets of Langerhan's in the pancreas to produce enough insulin) or Addison's disease (failure of the adrenal cortex to produce enough steroids).

Steroids are now used in the treatment of such conditions as asthma, rheumatoid arthritis, eye inflammations and certain skin diseases. Steroid treatment can cause disturbance of the plasma electrolyles as a side-effect which must therefore be checked regularly during such therapy.

TISSUE ELECTROLYTES

The concentration of electrolyte ions present in the blood plasma or serum is practically identical with that in tissue fluid; but the concentration of the various types of ions in the intracellular fluid is very different.

The main difference between the intracellular and extracellular fluid lies in the concentration of sodium and potassium ions.

In the plasma, there is a much higher concentration of sodium than potassium ions.

Inside the cells this ratio is reversed.

The high concentration of potassium inside cells has one important practical implication. If special care is not taken in collecting blood for electrolyte examination the red cells may be damaged and the potassium from within the cells be released into the plasma, giving an erroneously high reading for the potassium concentration.

To avoid damaging the red cells (hemolysis), the syringe and needle must be dry, as in the sterile disposable packs; the blood must not be squirted out through the needle, and the collecting container must not contain water but may, of course, contain liquid anticoagulant.

In addition the estimations must be undertaken soon after the blood is collected. If blood is allowed to stand for several hours the potassium ions gradually diffuse out of the red cells into the plasma, again giving a false high reading for the potassium concentration, even without any hemolysis.

OSMOSIS AND FILTRATION

OSMOSIS

When red blood cells are put into plain water they immediately burst. This is because they are overdistended by water passing into them through their cell membrane.

This passage of water is called **osmosis** and the pressure which bursts the red blood cells is called **osmotic pressure** (Fig. 14.1(a)).

However, if our red blood cells are introduced into a 2% saline solution, a salt concentration significantly higher than that existing inside the cells, the opposite happens. Water passes from the red blood cells into the more concentrated salt solution outside, causing them to shrink and crenate (Fig. 14.1(b)).

These are two examples of the effect of osmosis. For osmosis to occur there must be a membrane which allows water to pass through but which holds back the molecules or ions of substances dissolved in the water. This is called a **semipermeable membrane**.

In the illustrations the red cell envelope is the semipermeable membrane.

Solvent (water in the case of cells) is always transferred from the weaker to the more concentrated solution, unless of course we apply sufficient pressure to counteract the osmotic pressure.

The exact mechanism of osmosis is not yet fully understood but this does not prevent us from understanding its practical implications.

To demonstrate osmosis on a larger scale a piece of parchment may be used as a semipermeable membrane. This can be fixed over the open end of a thistle funnel after filling the funnel with sugar solution (Fig. 14.2).

If the funnel is then inverted with the parchment under the water and the tap opened, the level of water will rise in the stem of thistle funnel. The height to which it rises is a measure of the osmotic: pressure. The greater the concentration of particles (molecules or ions) dissolved, the greater the osmotic pressure produced.

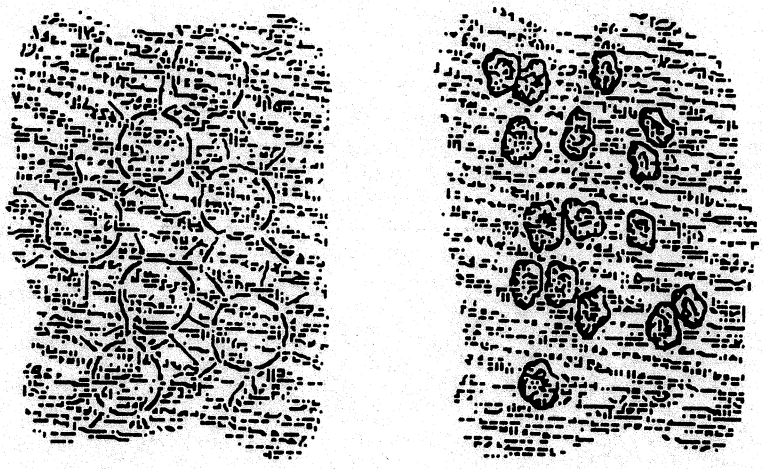
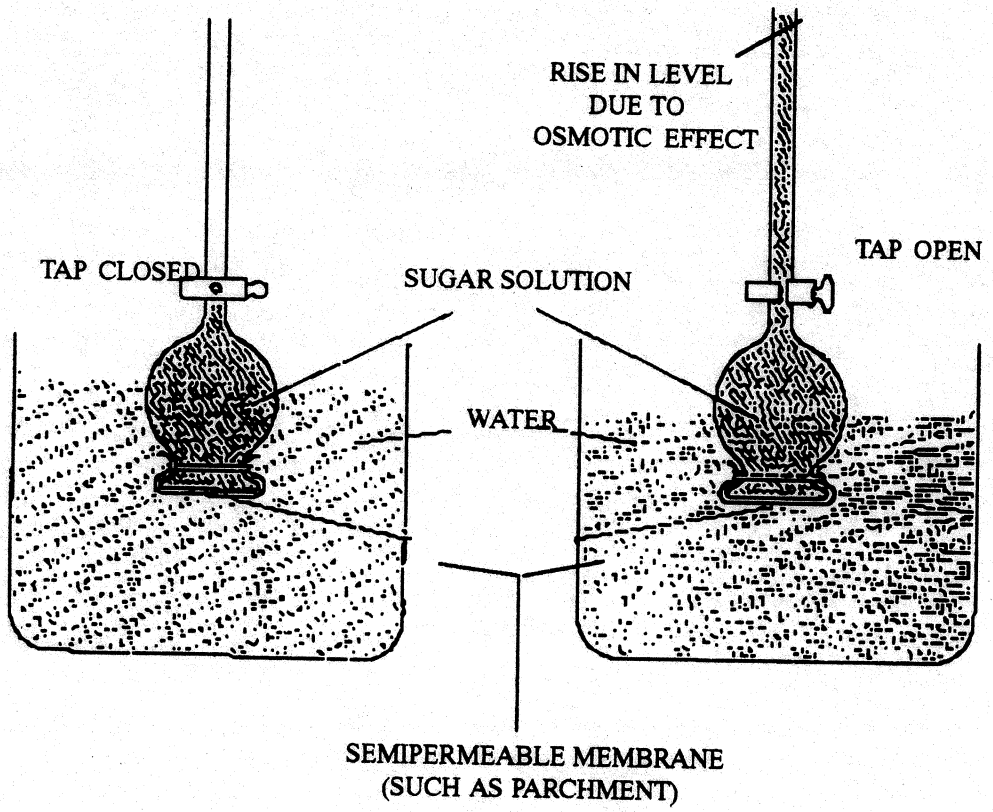


Figure 14.1
(a) Cells bursting in water; (b) cells crenating in two percent saline.



OSMOTIC PRESSURE IN THE BODY

An osmotic pressure only develops if the semipermeable membrane will not allow the dissolved salts to pass through.

The walls of our blood capillaries only partially prevent the salts (electrolytes) in the blood from diffusing out into the tissue spaces. Increasing the concentration of electrolytes in the blood only temporarily produces an osmotic effect, drawing fluid into the capillaries from the tissue spaces.

Even this temporary effect can be of value, for example, in reducing intracranial pressure to facilitate operations on a brain tumor. Within a few hours however there is sufficient diffusion of electrolytes across the capillary walls for the salt concentrations to equalize.

The plasma proteins have large molecules and, except in inflammation, they cannot traverse the capillary walls. So it is the plasma proteins which have the most osmotic effect in relation to the tissue fluid.

The two main types of protein in the plasma are albumin and globulin. Globulin molecules are bigger. But there are far more molecules of albumin. Since the osmotic pressure is proportional to the number of molecules it is the albumin which produces the greatest osmotic effect.

The blood in our arteries is under considerable pressure. At the arterial end of our capillaries the pressure is still sufficient not only to prevent osmotic flow into the capillary but actually to cause fluid to pass out through the capillary wall into the tissue spaces (Fig. 14.3).

By the time blood reaches the venous end of the capillary its pressure has dropped so much that the osmotic effect of the plasma proteins inside the capillary is no longer counteracted and fluid returns into the vessel again, the capillary wall acting as a semipermeable membrane.

If the plasma protein (especially the albumin) is reduced, as in nephritis or protein starvation, the osmotic pressure is correspondingly reduced until eventually it is insufficient for fluid to pass back into the capillary from the tissue spaces. So fluid accumulates in the tissues causing edema (Gr. oidema, swelling), especially in the dependent parts and also in lax tissues around the eyes.

In congestive heart failure the heart fails to pump the blood from the veins to the arteries fast enough. So there is a pressure build-up in the veins. As a result of this venous engorgement the pressure at the venous

end of the capillary loops is higher than normal.

The osmotic pressure due to the plasma proteins in the capillary is insufficient to overcome this raised capillary pressure. So, again, fluid accumulates in the tissue spaces and edema develops, particularly where the effect of gravity is most marked, as in the ankles, or if the patient is sitting in bed, over the sacrum.

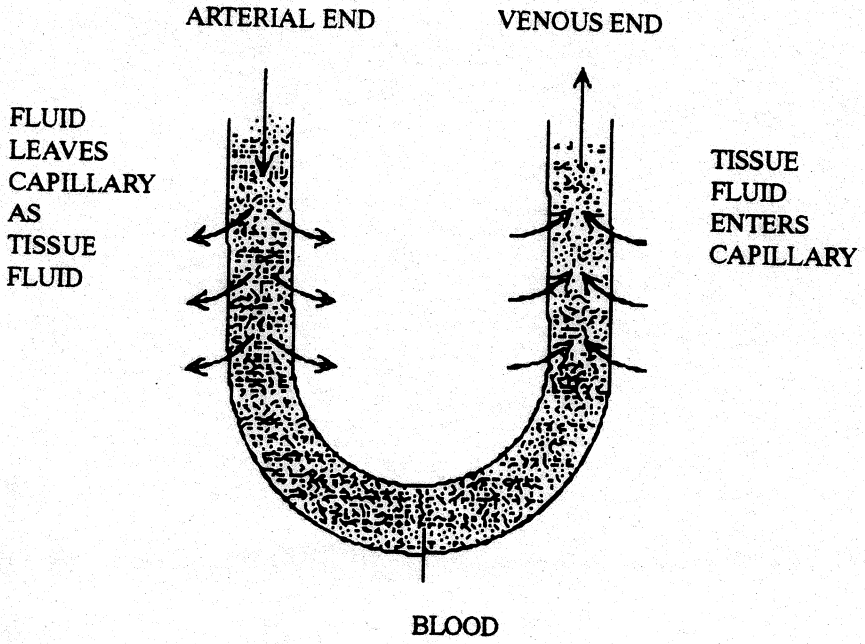


Figure 14.3

Capillary loop.

TONICITY

If two solutions have the same osmotic pressure they are called **isotonic**. In medicine the term "isotonic saline" is used to describe a salt solution (0.85% sodium chloride in water) which has the same osmotic pressure as the salts in the blood.

Ringer-Locke's solution is similarly "isotonic" but has a multiple salt composition more closely resembling that actually present in the blood.

Red blood cells neither shrink nor burst when placed in isotonic saline.

Recent developments have made it possible to measure osmotic pressure directly. The apparatus used is called an osmometer and it works by measuring the freezing point depression produced by a substance in water. The results are expressed in milli-osmoles/liter. Thus 1000 milli-

osmoles of a substance dissolved in 1 liter of water depresses the freezing point by 1.86°C.

The normal osmolarity of blood serum is 275-295 milli-osmoles/liter (mOsm/liter) and is mainly due to the electrolytes.

The term "**hypertonic saline**" is used to describe a solution having a salt concentration which is greater than that in blood, for example, 10% saline (3200 mOsm/liter). The raised intracranial pressure of cerebral tumor may be temporarily lowered by injecting hypertonic solutions, e.g. 10% saline or 25% glucose (1400 mOsm/liter) intravenously. The osmotic effect is sufficient to draw fluid out of the tissue spaces for 2 to 4 hours, causing the brain tissue to shrink markedly and allow the cranial bones to be removed without damage to the brain which would otherwise bulge out due to the raised intracranial pressure.

The term "**hypotonic saline**" is used to describe a solution having a salt concentration weaker than that in blood. It is used in conditions where all the constituents of the blood have become over-concentrated (hemo-concentration) due to water loss without corresponding salt loss.

MEDICAL APPLICATIONS OF OSMOTIC PRESSURE

SALINE PURGATIVES

The best known saline purgative is magnesium sulfate ($MgSO_4$ or Epsom salts). To produce the maximum effect it should be taken on an empty stomach, usually first thing in the morning, so that it passes directly through the stomach into the duodenum. It should be dissolved in sufficient water to be isotonic or slightly hypotonic. A 6.5% solution is isotonic. So 6.5 g will retain 100 ml of water in the gut, which should nearly double the volume of the feces. It is important not to give magnesium sulfate in hypertonic solution as this induces closure of the pylorus and may cause vomiting.

OSMOTIC DIURETICS

Any increase in the amount of substances dissolved in the urine causes an increase in the osmotic pressure of the urine and results in an increase in the amount of urine produced. Two substances which act in this way and which can be taken by the mouth are urea and potassium nitrate. They should not, however, be used if there is kidney damage.

Another substance acting in a similar way is sodium sulfate, given in 6% solution as an intravenous drip. It is used when the kidneys have

stopped functioning following an operation on the urinary tract.

OSMOTIC POULTICE

Before the introduction of antibiotics the standard treatment of boils and carbuncles was the application of a poultice consisting of magnesium sulfate and glycerine. The effect of this is to draw out fluid, including pus, from the affected site. This treatment can still be used with advantage where the lesion fails to resolve on antibiotic therapy.

FILTRATION

A simple example of filtration is a tea strainer. This has a mesh with holes small enough to hold back the tea leaves but which readily allows the tea infusion to pass through. A Tetley's tea bag acts in the same way.

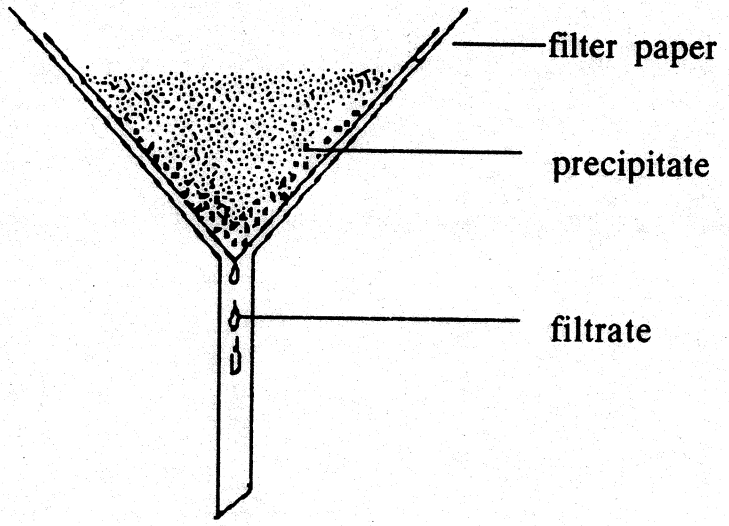


Figure 14.4
Filtration funnel.

So does the chemist's filter paper placed in a filtration funnel (Fig. 14.4) which holds back a precipitate but allows fluid and dissolved substances to pass through.

One medical application of this principle is the bacteriological filter (Fig. 14.5). This has pores which are too small for bacteria to pass through. This enables solutions that would be damaged by heat to be

rendered bacteria-free without autoclaving. It should be noted that viruses, being significantly smaller than bacteria, can pass through such filters.

The pores in a bacteriological filter are so small that considerable pressure is required to force the fluid through. This is provided by means of a vacuum pump. By evacuating the flask into which the fluid is being filtered (Fig. 14.5) the atmospheric pressure effectively forces the fluid through.

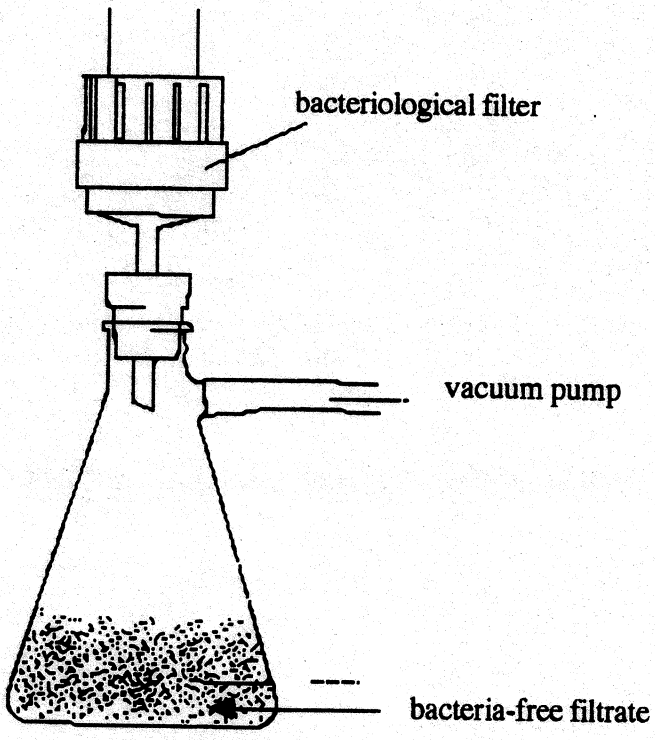


Figure 14.5
Sterilization by bacteriological filtration.

FILTRATION IN THE KIDNEY

In the kidney, the filtration force is provided by the blood pressure (Fig. 14.6). The filtration occurs in the renal glomeruli of which there are about a million in each kidney.

The filter in each glomerulus is essentially composed of two layers, the capillary wall and the lining of Bowman's capsule (Fig. 14.7).

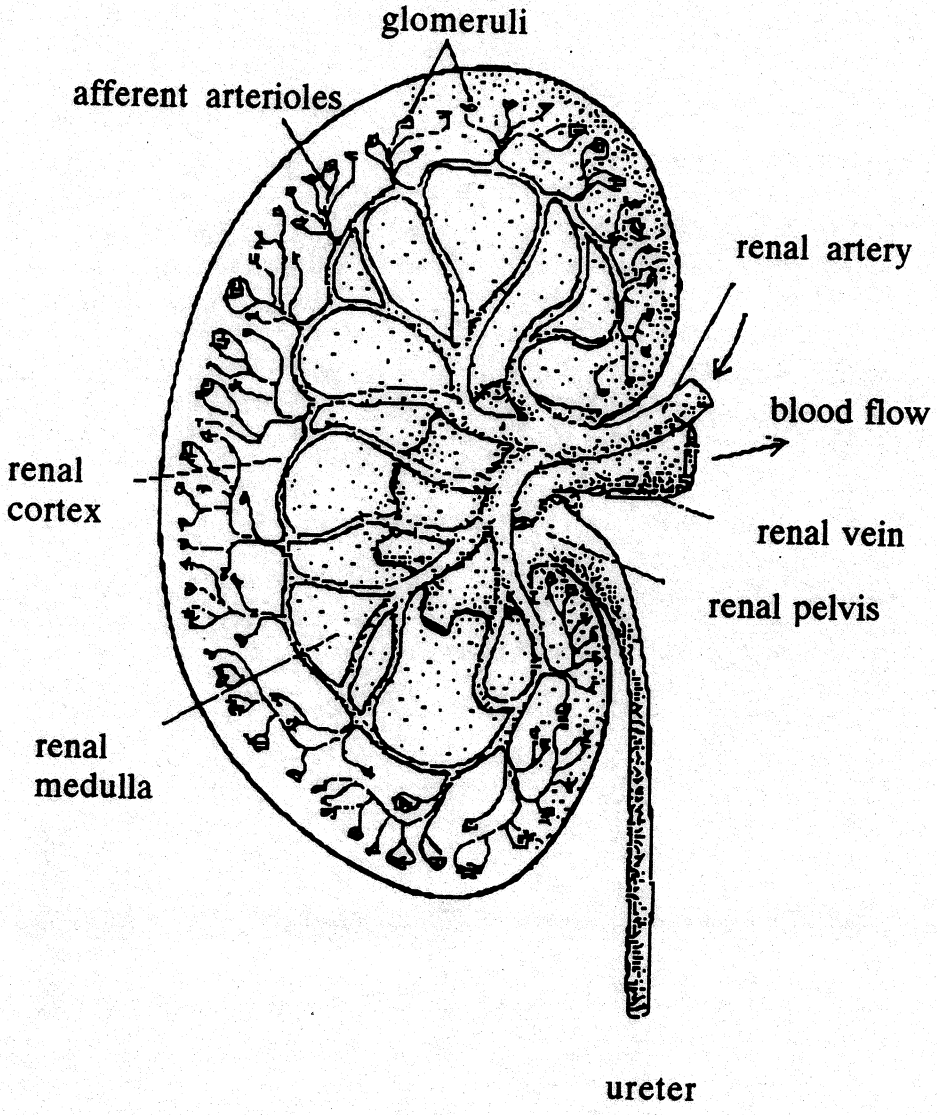


Figure 14.6
Kidney showing how branches of the renal artery supply blood under pressure to the glomeruli in the renal cortex through the afferent arterioles.

The pressure within the glomerular capillaries is sufficient to force through this double-layered filter the fluid component of the blood including all the substances dissolved in it except those with large molecules like the plasma proteins.

Only if the kidney is damaged, as in nephritis, do the proteins pass through; albumin is the smallest protein and evidence of such damage is the presence of albuminuria (albumin in the urine).

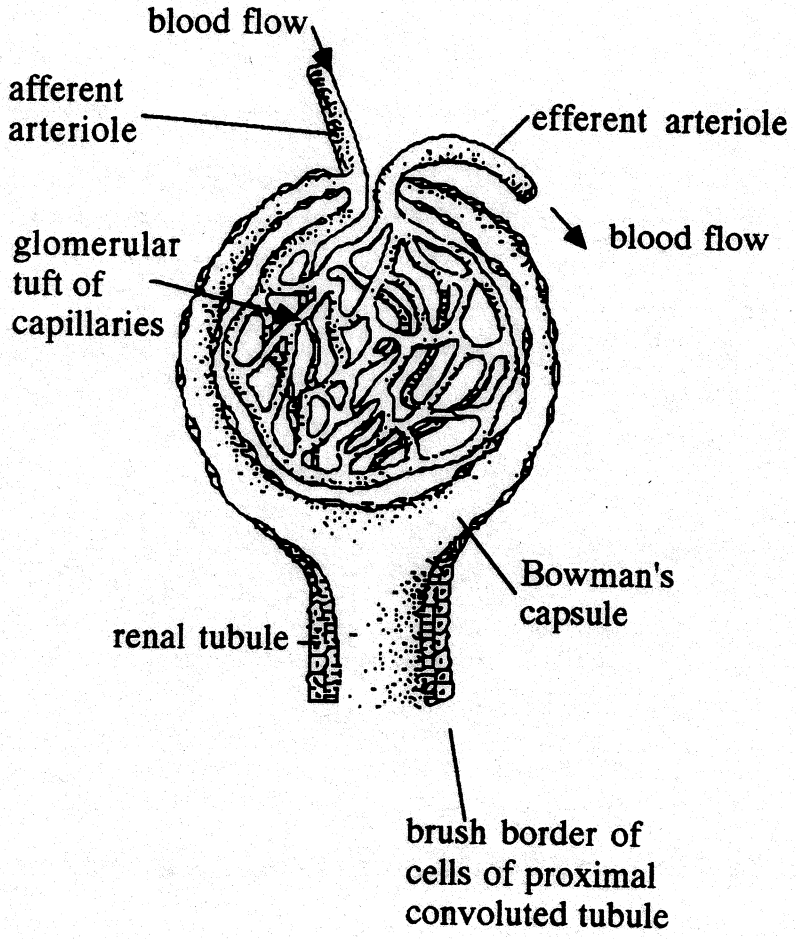


Figure 14.7
Glomerulus and Boman's capsule. (L. afferens, carrying toward and L. afferens, carrying from.)

This filtration process is the first step in the formation of urine. Of the 200 liters of water that are passed through the glomeruli every day, all but 1.5 liters are reabsorbed by the kidney tubules (Fig. 14.8). Nearly all the sodium and chloride is reabsorbed and normally all the glucose, is reabsorbed. This selective reabsorption of those chemicals required by the body is an active process carried out by the renal tubule cells and involves work against osmotic pressure. Water reabsorption is controlled by the antidiuretic hormone of the posterior pituitary gland; the more hormone that is secreted, the more water is reabsorbed.

The waste materials filtered through the blood by the kidney are described in the section on waste materials in Chapter 29 and the one on urine in Chapter 30.

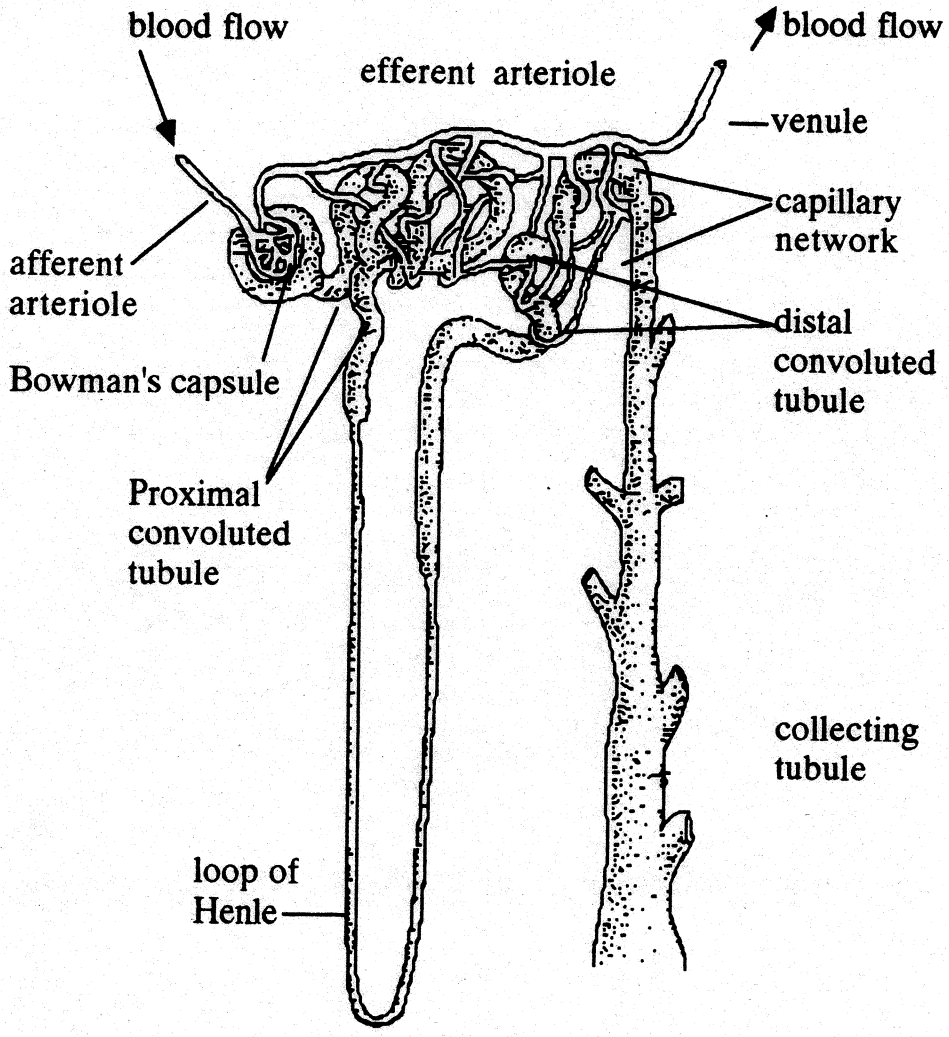


Figure 14.8
Kidney tubule: each renal unit (nephron) consists of a glomerulus, a Bowman's capsule, and a tubule. Each kidney tubule consists of a proximal convoluted tubule, a loop of Henle, and a distal convoluted tubule, which then opens into a collecting tubule, each of which drains a number of kidney tubules into the renal pelvis.

ARTIFICIAL KIDNEY

Anuria (failure of the kidney to produce urine) occurs following shock and its associated fall in blood pressure. It may result from an incompatible blood transfusion. The artificial kidney provides a means of tiding the patient over the crisis until kidney function recovers. It is also used in more permanent cases of kidney failure, particularly prior to renal transplant. In the artificial kidney the patient's blood is passed through

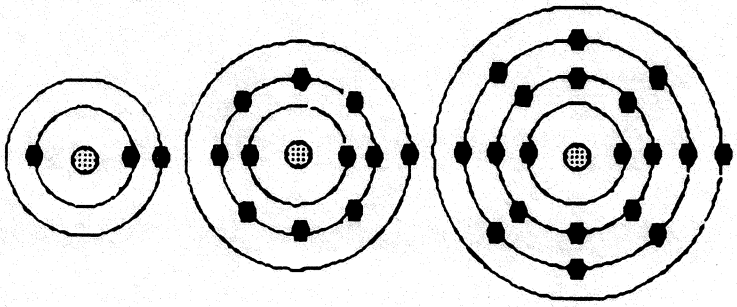
long coils of collodion tubing surrounded by a saline solution. These tubes are sufficiently permeable for all but the larger molecules, such as plasma proteins, to pass through. A similar effect is produced by "peritoneal dialysis" in which a saline solution is passed constantly through the peritoneal cavity. It is important to monitor the serum electrolytes in these patients.

SODIUM and POTASSIUM

Sodium and potassium are the most common elements in the chemical group known as the alkali metals. They are also the two most abundant metals in the body and the ones most frequently estimated in blood samples. They are present in the form of sodium ions Na^+ and potassium ions K^+.

ATOMIC STRUCTURE

All the alkali metals have a similar atomic structure in having only one electron in the outer shell, which gives each element a valency of one. Diagrammatically the first three elements in the series may be represented thus:



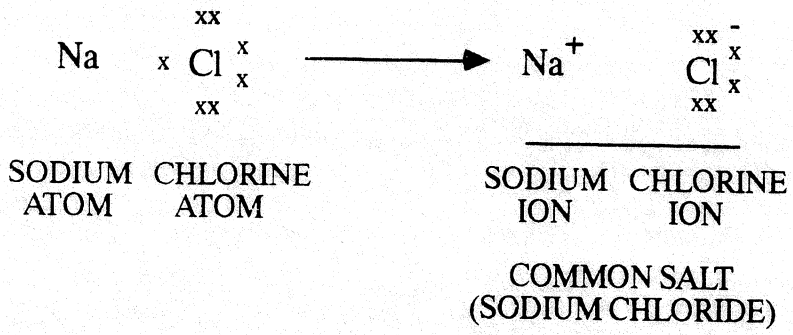
	LITHIUM	SODIUM	POTASSIUM
Electron configuration	2. 1	2, 8, 1	2, 8, 8, 1
Atomic number	3	11	19

The above three elements are all of medical importance, lithium in the treatment of certain mental disorders, sodium and potassium as key elements in the normal body chemistry.

If the sodium atom loses its outer (valence) electron it becomes a positively charged sodium ion Na^+. Since the two remaining shells are completely filled it now has the same electron configuration as the inert gas neon and is very stable.

In contrast the sodium atom is very unstable, that is, very reactive. The effect of the complete inner electron shells is to screen the solitary electron in the outer shell from the electrical attraction of the nucleus of the atom. As this outer electron is held in orbit by a comparatively

weak force it can be transferred to the atom of another element, such as chlorine, and an ionic link is established between the ions produced.



The compounds of sodium are not composed of molecules but of positive and negative ions, attracted toward each other by their opposite charges.

The electrolytes in our body fluids are of this nature.

With potassium the structural factors promoting reactivity are even more pronounced. The lone outer (valence) electron of potassium is further away from the nucleus than that of sodium; it is also more effectively screened from the electrical attraction of the nucleus of the atom because of the additional inner ring of eight electrons. So the outer electron is even more readily transferred to another element, making potassium still more reactive than sodium.

Lithium on the other hand is generally less reactive than sodium, as might be inferred from its atomic structure. The outer solitary electron is closer to the atomic nucleus and much less effectively screened from the nucleus by the intervening duplet of electrons. It is therefore more firmly bound to the lithium atom and less readily transferred to the atom of another element.

The readiness with which sodium and potassium form compounds and the difficulty with which the compounds are separated into their components is the main reason why the discovery of these elements was relatively late in chemical history.

DISCOVERY

Potassium was the first of the alkali metals to be discovered, by Humphry Davy, in England in 1807. Davy is better known for his discovery of the anesthetic "laughing gas" (nitrous oxide, N_2O) and for his invention of the miner's safety lamp.

You will remember that if an electric current is passed through an electrolyte, it decomposes, the process being called electrolysis. Davy used electrolysis to decompose caustic potash, KOH.

At the cathode, negative pole, he saw "small globules of a high metallic luster." He showed that these globules were in fact a metal, which he called potassium, and that it had properties which were very unusual for a metal, being lighter than water and reacting with it in a spectacular manner.

In the same year (1807) Davy discovered sodium, by electrolysis of caustic soda, NaOH.

OCCURRENCE

Sodium is the sixth and potassium the seventh most abundant element on earth, each constituting about 2.5% of the earth's crust. Sodium is the commonest of the alkali metals and potassium the next most common.

Both elements occur in igneous rocks, such as felspar (sodium aluminum silicate) and potash felspar (potassium aluminum silicate). Weathering gradually breaks down the rocks. The insoluble felspars are partly converted by the carbon dioxide in the air to soluble carbonates. Eventually far more sodium than potassium is converted into soluble carbonate. This is washed away and accumulates in the oceans or inland seas. As a result there is far more sodium than potassium in the sea.

Of the dissolved solids in ordinary sea water, 75% is sodium chloride and less than 3% is potassium chloride. Even so, some of the richest deposits of potassium salts are at the sites of ancient lakes or sea beds, Stassfurt in Northern Germany being one of the largest. Deposits of sodium chloride or rock salt are found in almost every country; one of the most renowned is in Siberia.

In plants potassium occurs as salts of organic acids, for example oxalates in sorrel and rhubarb. Wood ash contains about 30% potassium carbonate, a fact much appreciated by gardeners. Extraction with water and evaporation in metal pots gave rise to the name potash (pot ash).

The body fluids of all animals contain sodium and potassium ions.

Sodium is present in very much the higher concentration in the extracellular fluids including blood. Potassium predominates in the intracellular fluid.

The milk of carnivorous animals contains sodium and potassium in equal amounts; the milk of herbivorous animals and of humans contains a higher proportion of potassium, their milk ash containing about 5% sodium and just over 20% potassium.

PROPERTIES

Sodium and potassium are soft, silvery white metals, sufficiently light to float on water; lithium is the lightest of all metals but has a harder consistency. At room temperature sodium and potassium are soft enough to be cut with a knife, squeezed between the fingers (not recommended) or extruded through an orifice, potassium being the softest of the three.

When heated out of contact with air they melt into silvery liquids.

The chemical reactions of the three metals are similar, those of potassium being more vigorous than those of sodium which in turn are more vigorous than those of lithium. They are not attacked by perfectly dry oxygen but in moist air each rapidly tarnishes to form the metal hydroxide and carbonate. When heated in air or oxygen the metals burn to form oxides.

REACTION WITH WATER

Lithium, sodium, and potassium react with water to form the hydroxide and hydrogen gas.

$2Na$	+	$2H_2O$	=	$2NaOH$	+	H_2
(s)		(1)		(aq)		(g)
SODIUM				SODIUM HYDROXIDE		HYDROGEN

A small portion of sodium, placed on water in an open vessel, shoots about the surface. The heat produced is not sufficient to ignite the hydrogen spontaneously unless the sodium is prevented from moving. If it is ignited, it burns with the yellow flame characteristic of sodium.

Lithium reacts with water similarly but less vigorously. If the hydrogen is ignited it burns with a crimson lithium flame.

A pellet of potassium placed on water reacts even more vigorously than sodium and the hydrogen ignites spontaneously.

$2K$	+	$2H2O$	=	$2KOH$	+	H_2
(s)		(1)		(aq)		(g)

The hydrogen produced burns with the lilac color characteristic of potassium. In view of the readiness with which sodium and potassium react with water, they need to be stored under oil. Even the small amount of water vapor in the air is sufficient to start a reaction.

REACTION WITH ACIDS

The metals react strongly and, with the exception of lithium, explosively with acids to form salts and release hydrogen.

$$\underset{(s)}{2Na} + \underset{(aq)}{2HCl} = \underset{(aq)}{2NaCl} + \underset{(g)}{H_2}$$

REACTION WITH OTHER ELEMENTS

Potassium combines even more readily than sodium with chlorine, oxygen, and sulfur; lithium combines rather less readily. Sodium and potassium have an affinity for these elements which is so great that they will decompose compounds of the above elements to combine with them, for example,

$$\underset{\text{ALUMINUM CHLORIDE}}{AlCl_3} + \underset{\text{SODIUM}}{3Na} = \underset{\text{SODIUM CHLORIDE}}{3NaCl} + \underset{\text{METALLIC ALUMINUM}}{Al}$$

Sodium and potassium are thus powerful reducing agents; each atom readily donating an electron and becoming converted into sodium and potassium ions in the process.

SODIUM AND POTASSIUM IONS

SODIUM CHLORIDE, NACl

Sodium chloride occurs either as colorless crystals or in the form of a white crystalline powder as in table salt. It is odorless but has a characteristic salty taste. A solution of sodium chloride in water is referred to simply as saline.

Normal sodium chloride solution, in the sense used by chemists, contains the gram formula weight (58.5 g) in one liter of water. But in a medical context the term "normal saline" refers to physiologically normal saline. This denotes a saline solution which is isotonic with human and animal tissues.

Physiologically normal saline is 0.9% NaCl and its freezing point is 0.55°C below that of water.

You will recall from the last chapter that a freezing point depression of 1.86°C is produced by a solution with an osmolarity of 1000 mOsm/liter.

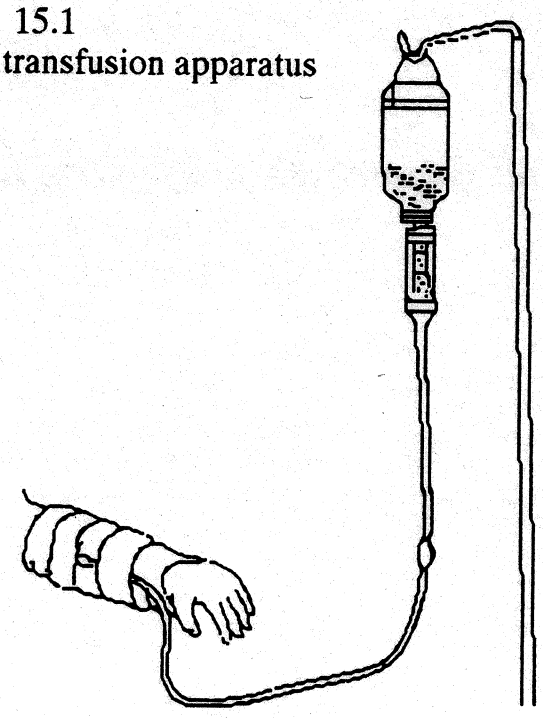
Experiment shows that osmolarity is proportional to freezing point depression. Therefore, 0.9% NaCl has an osmolarity of

$$\frac{1000 \times 0.55}{1.86} = 296 \text{ mOsm/liter}$$

Physiologically normal saline is extensively used for the cleansing of wounds. Being isotonic with living tissue it does not disturb the osmotic equilibrium of the cells and does not cause the stinging sensation that water may produce on cuts and bruises.

Intravenous preparations of sterile normal saline are frequently used for transfusion (Fig. 15.1), as in the treatment of dehydration due to severe gastroenteritis or cholera. Its U.S. pharmaceopeial (USP) category is "electrolyte replenisher."

Figure 15.1
Saline transfusion apparatus



Hypertonic saline solutions are used in dressing packs for the treatment of varicose ulcers. The effect of hypertonic saline is to remove fluid from the tissues osmotically, thus reducing edema (excess fluid in the tissues). An example of hypertonic saline commercially available is 1.8% NaClwhich has a freezing point depression of 1.10°C and therefore

an osmolarity of

$$1000 \times \frac{0.59}{1.86} = 591 \text{ m Osm/liter}$$

this is nearly twice that of living tissue.

As the saline concentration increases, the osmolarity becomes larger. Thus, 3% NaCl has a freezing point depression of 1.82°C and

$$1000 \times \frac{1.82}{1.86} = 978 \text{ m Osm/liter}$$

This is over three times greater than the osmolarity of living tissue. So saline of this strength has a powerful osmotic effect in removing excess fluid from tissues.

As fluid is withdrawn from the tissues it tends to dilute the hypertonic saline, gradually reducing its osmolarity and making it less effective. So a hypertonic saline pack is most effective just after it is applied.

Tablets of sodium chloride which have been "enteric coated" to prevent digestion in the stomach are given by mouth in the treatment of salt loss, for example for heat exhaustion in the tropics.

Strong salt solution by mouth is an emetic (causes vomiting). It acts by irritating the stomach. Like other emetics it should not be used in the treatment of poisoning by substances such as acids, which can damage and weaken the stomach wall, because of the danger of perforation.

Sodium chloride can be highly toxic or even fatal in large doses as when given to infants mistakenly as sugar.

POTASSIUM CHLORIDE, KCl

Potassium chloride is a white crystalline powder resembling common salt and having a similar saline taste. Its main use in medicine is in the treatment of potassium depletion. Its USP category is "electrolyte replenisher." It may be given by mouth as a mixture or as a solution produced from effervescent potassium chloride tablets. Enteric-coated tablets of potassium chloride are also used but need to be of the slowrelease type to avoid ulceration of the bowel wall by the high local concentration of

potassium chloride.

Potassium chloride is sometimes given intravenously, well diluted in physiologically normal saline or 5% dextrose. If injected too rapidly it can depress the heart's action or even cause cardiac arrest by "potassium inhibition."

SODIUM IODIDE, NaI

Sodium iodide is a white crystalline powder with a slightly bitter saline taste. In moist air it decomposes, turning yellow due to the liberation of iodine. It is used for preventing goiter in regions where this is endemic, being given as 0.01% sodium iodide in table salt. Its USP category is "source of iodine."

In hospital practice it is used as premedication before a thyroid scan to study thyroid activity, also prior to operation for removal of thyroid gland tissue in cases of thyrotoxicosis.

POTASSIUM IODIDE, KI

Potassium iodide occurs as slightly opaque crystals or as a white crystalline powder. It is odorless with a slightly bitter saline taste, similar to sodium iodide. It is the most commonly used form in which iodine is administered in regions where goiter is endemic due to iodine lack. It is taken as 0.01% potassium iodide in table salt.

In medical practice potassium iodide is also used as an expectorant, to thin down the bronchial mucus in cases of asthma and bronchitis. Its USP category is "expectorant."

SODIUM BICARBONATE, $NAHCO_3$

Sodium bicarbonate, also called bicarbonate of soda, occurs either as small opaque crystals or as a white powder. It is odorless but has a salty taste. It is one of the more commonly used gastric antacids but has the disadvantage that it liberates carbon dioxide in the stomach.

$$\underset{(s)}{NaHCO_3} + \underset{(aq)}{HCl} = \underset{(aq)}{NaCl} + \underset{(l)}{H_2O} + \underset{(g)}{CO_2}$$

Although giving rapid subjective relief by neutralizing acidity, often with satisfyingly noisy belching due to the carbon dioxide gas released, it tends to stimulate the stomach to produce more acid. On the other hand if too much sodium bicarbonate is taken it can cause alkalosis.

Used both orally and intravenously, sodium bicarbonate solution is used in the treatment of acidosis as for diabetic coma. Its USP category is "antacid."

LITHIUM CARBONATE, Li_2CO_3

Lithium carbonate is a white amorphous or microcrystalline powder. It is odorless but has a slightly alkaline taste. Medically it is used in the treatment of mental patients and recently there has been a great increase in the use of lithium carbonate for the treatment of affective disorders (mania and depression) with encouraging results.

In order to maintain the blood concentration of lithium at the correct level (0.6 to 1.5 mmol/liter) it is convenient for the treatment to be taken orally in the form of capsules or tablets, for example, Eskalith (Smith, Kline and French) and Lithonate (Rowell Labs., Inc.), which provide a gradual release of lithium carbonate into the small intestine.

SODIUM HYDROXIDE, NaOH

A powerful and poisonous alkali, sodium hydroxide, also known as caustic soda, is a white, slightly translucent solid. On exposure to air it first becomes moist; then the surface solution reacts with carbon dioxide in the air to form a dry crust of sodium carbonate.

Sodium hydroxide is an ionic compound. It readily dissolves in water producing a solution of sodium and hydroxyl (OH^-) ions. The high concentration of hydroxyl ions makes the solution strongly alkaline (and highly poisonous), enabling it to neutralize acids.

$$\underset{\text{BASE}}{NaOH_{(aq)}} + \underset{\text{ACID}}{HCl_{(aq)}} = \underset{\text{SALT}}{NaCl_{(aq)}} + \underset{\text{WATER}}{H_2O_{(l)}}$$

If the equation is written ionically, thus

$$Na^+ + OH^- + H^+ + Cl^- \longrightarrow Na^+ + Cl^- + H_2O$$

we can see that the sodium and chlorine ions take no part in the reaction which is simply the combination of hydrogen and hydroxyl ions to form water, namely $H^+ + OH^- \longrightarrow H_2O$. The USP category of sodium hydroxide is a "pharmaceutic aid (alkalizing agent)."

POTASSIUM HYDROXIDE, KOH

Potassium hydroxide, sometimes known as caustic potash, has properties

very similar to sodium hydroxide and, like it, is a powerful and poisonous alkali. Its USP category is also as a "pharmaceutic aid (alkalizing agent)." Concentrated caustic potash solution is used in biology for dissolving dead flesh away from the bone, for instance to obtain the skeleton of a frog.

SODIUM and POTASSIUM in the BODY

In the body the sodium ion, Na^+ is the most abundant cation in the extracellular fluid and the potassium ion, K^+ predominates in the intracellular fluid.

Of the total potassium in the body 98% is situated intracellularly, the concentration being highest in the cells of the brain.

Intracellular fluid is maintained at a very constant composition. This constancy is essential for life. During starvation, for example, it is not until the very late stages that the body begins to break down intracellular materials for fuel with a resultant increase in potassium excretion in the urine.

The concentration of sodium and potassium in the extracellular fluids is also maintained within very narrow limits, although not quite as constant as in the intracellular fluid. Thus the normal serum sodium is within the range 133 to 144 mmols/liter and the potassium 3.5 to 5.5 mmols/liter.

To maintain these cations at the right level requires a flexible control mechanism to balance the losses in urine, perspiration, and feces against the dietary intake.

The dietary intake of sodium varies very considerably, usually being between 1 to 6 g (approximately 50 to 300 mmol) daily. Major factors are the amounts of cooking and table salt added to food. As a buffer against the variations in dietary intake there is a substantial reservoir of sodium provided by the bony skeleton. Approximately one-third of the body sodium is in skeletal bone and can be rapidly mobilized when required.

The chief regulator in maintaining a constant extracellular sodium concentration is the kidney. The excretion of sodium in the urine is adjusted very closely to the body's needs. This is achieved by the extent to which sodium is reabsorbed in the kidney tubules. This reabsorption is controlled by steroid hormones from the adrenal cortex, especially aldosterone.

If sufficient adrenal cortex tissue is damaged, as in Addison's disease, the steroid secretion becomes insufficient to promote the necessary reabsorption of sodium by the kidney tubules. Excessive sodium is lost, resulting in a low sodium level in the blood and tissue fluid.

This is called hyponatremia (Gr. hypo, low, +Gr. natrium, sodium, +Gr. haima, blood).

When the serum sodium falls to about 120 mmol/liter mental confusion occurs. Below 110 mmol/liter lethargy, coma and convulsions develop. Without prompt treatment as with intravenous hypertonic sodium chloride, death may result.

The reverse occurs in tumors or overactivity of the adrenal cortex, as in Cushing's syndrome. Adrenal steroids are secreted in excess, causing the kidneys to reabsorb too much sodium. This results in water retention as an osmotic effect and the tissues become waterlogged or edematous. Steroids used in therapy, for example, for rheumatoid arthritis, can have a similar effect.

Failure of the kidneys to excrete sufficient sodium ions is an important factor in the edema of heart and kidney failure.

The dietary intake of potassium is about 4 g or 100 mmol/day. Part of this (5-10%) is lost in the feces. The remainder is excreted by the kidneys. Reabsorption of potassium by the kidney tubules is never as complete as that of sodium, even in states of severe potassium depletion.

Potassium depletion may be due to diarrhea and vomiting. Some diuretics can also cause potassium depletion so that potassium supplement, for instance potassium chloride may be necessary.

Effects of potassium depletion include muscular weakness, lethargy and increased sensitivity of the heart to digoxin. Severe depletion can cause death.

Recently it has been shown that potassium depletion may occur in the recovery phase of severe pernicious anemia. Treatment with vitamin B_{12} results in large numbers of red cells, white cells and platelets being produced by the bone marrow, all requiring to be supplied with potassium.

So potassium deficiency develops and the patient may die from hypokalemia (Gr. hypo, low, +Gr. kalium, potassium, +Gr. haima, blood). These previously unexplained deaths early in the treatment of severe

pernicious anemia can now be prevented by giving the patient potassium chloride by mouth.

ESTIMATION of SODIUM and POTASSIUM in BLOOD

We have seen how a sodium flame was yellow and a potassium flame lilac. The colors are so characteristic for these elements that they are used in the laboratory for estimating the amounts of these substances in the blood, by means of an instrument called a flame photometer. The instrument is set using standard sodium or potassium solutions. A known dilution of the patient's serum is sprayed into the flame. The intensity of light produced at the appropriate wavelength indicates the concentration of sodium and potassium present. It is very quick and avoids the complicated chemical estimations which used to be necessary. In many hospitals it is now undertaken automatically by a machine such as the autoanalyzer (Autotecnicon Ltd.). It is, however, equally important that the human part of the operation, the collection and labeling of the specimen, be carried out with care and that it be sent to the laboratory without delay. Some of the pitfalls are described at the end of Chapter 13.

CHLORINE and The HALOGEN GROUP

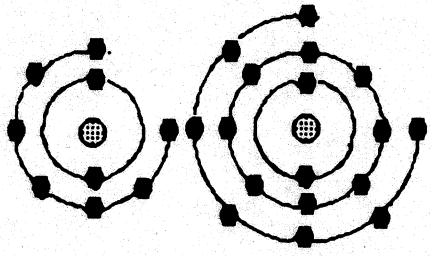
Chlorine was used as a poison gas In the I914-1918 war causing great disability and loss of life. The same element has also saved many lives and prevented much water-borne disease by making our water supply safe to drink and by disinfecting our swimming pools. The chlorine ions form an essential ingredient of our body fluids in which they are the most abundant anions.

Chlorine is the commonest member of the group of elements called the halogens. Their great chemical reactivity is related to their atomic structure.

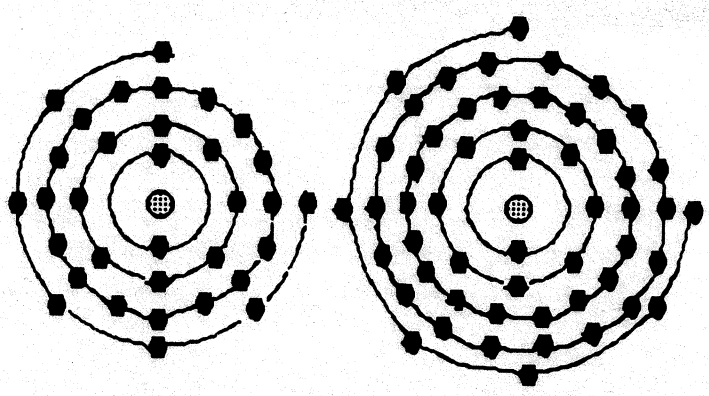
ATOMIC STRUCTURE

The five elements in the halogen group are fluorine, F, chlorine, Cl, bromine, Br, iodine, I, and astatine, At (Gr. astatos, unstable).

Astatine is a rare radioactive element made by man, that is so unstable that little is known of its chemistry. Each halogen has seven electrons in its outer (valence) shell.

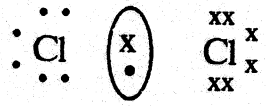


	FLUORINE	CHLORINE
Electron configuration:	2, 7	2, 8, 7
Atomic number:	9	17
State at room temperature:	pale yellow gas	green gas
Melting point:	-223°C	-102°C
Boiling point:	–187°C	-34°C
Radius of atom (pm):	64	99



	BROMINE	IODINE
Electron configuration:	2, 8, 18, 7	2, 8, 18, 18, 7
Atomic number:	35	53
State at room temperature:	dark red liquid	grayish black solid
Melting point:	-7°C	+114°C
Boiling point:	+59°C	+184°C
Radius of atom (pm):	114	133

The atoms of the halogens each need one electron to convert the outer (valence) electron shell into a stable octet. By forming a covalent bond between two atoms, as in F_2, ,Cl_2 ,Br_2 , and I_2 a certain degree of stability is achieved.



But this covalent bond is readily broken in favor of forming an ionic link with a metal.

The halogens readily unite with heated metals and are converted into the ions F^-, Cl^-, Br^-, and I^-. The union often occurs with sufficient vigor to produce a deflagration.

The readiness with which the halogen atoms accept electrons makes them very powerful oxidizing agents. It is this property which, at the right dilution, makes them good antiseptics, able to oxidize bacteria without damaging human tissue.

At high concentrations this same property makes them lethal to human tissue, such as chlorine gas acting on the cells of the respiratory tract.

The most reactive of all known elements is the halogen with the smallest atoms, fluorine. Next in reactivity among the halogens is chlorine, then bromine and then iodine.

The nucleus of the iodine atom is screened from the outer (valence) electron shell by the four intervening completed electron shells.

This diminishes the force available to attract an electron from another element into the gap in iodine's valence shell, so diminishing its degree of reactivity.

This screening effect is less in bromine, less still in chlorine and least of all in fluorine where only two electrons intervene between the nucleus and the valence shell.

The attraction exerted by the nucleus on an extraneous electron entering the orbit of this fluorine valence shell is powerful, hence its great reactivity.

Iodine with the largest atoms and molecules, I_2 has the highest boiling and melting points, next comes bromine, Br_2, then chlorine, Cl_2, and finally fluorine, F_2 with the lowest boiling and melting points and the smallest atoms in the group. These characteristics are tabulated near the beginning of this section.

FLUORINE, F_2

Fluorine (L. fluere, to flow) is a pale yellow corrosive gas which reacts with practically all organic and inorganic substances. Consequently it is highly toxic.

Its acid, hydrofluoric acid, HF is so corrosive that it cannot be contained in a glass vessel. In fact, it is used for etching glass.

Although fluorine is chemically similar to Chlorine it is too reactive to be used as an antiseptic; but fluorides, the salts of hydrofluoric acid, have been found to protect teeth from decay. Even fluorides, which contain the fluoride ion, F^-, are poisonous unless very diluted; for this reason there has been much controversy over the addition of fluoride to the water supply.

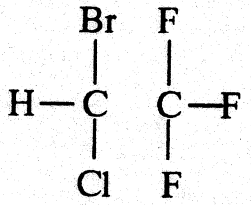
Supporters point out that in parts of the world where fluoride occurs naturally in the drinking water at a higher concentration than that recommended for adding artificially, the only ill effect is mottling of tooth enamel, at the same time the teeth being more resistant to decay.

Its opponents fear that there will be occasions when a poisonous concentration will occur, perhaps from evaporation in a saucepan or kettle. In places where the drinking water is fluoridated, there have been complaints about the taste of the water; fluoride has also been blamed for gastrointestinal disorders. But both could be due to other factors.

Meanwhile fluoridation of the water supplies continues to be introduced in new areas. So in a few years, it should be possible to form an opinion from personal experience.

HALOTHANE

One fluorine compound of medical importance is the general anesthetic halothane (fluothane, I.C.I.). This is an organic compound containing three different halogens, fluorine, chlorine, and bromine, $CHBrClCF_3$. Structurally it may be represented as



It has proved so satisfactory that it has replaced chloroform $CHCl_3$ as an anesthetic.

CHLORINE, Cl_2

Chlorine (Gr. Chloros, greenish yellow) is a greenish yellow gas. Chemically it is sufficiently reactive to combine directly with most elements. Its pungent odor is detectable at 3.5 ppm. At higher concentrations it is a respiratory tract irritant. At 1000 ppm a few deep breaths are fatal and for this reason it was used as a war gas in 1915.

It is now widely used in making medicines, antiseptics, insecticides, paints, dye-stuffs, textiles, solvents and many other products. All over the world it is used to make water safe to drink. Its oxidizing action readily destroys bacteria and provides the basis for a number of disinfectants, for example the hypochlorites.

The main acids derived from chlorine are hydrochloric acid and four oxy-acids:

	ACID	FORMULA	SALTS	EXAMPLES
	hydrochloric acid	HCl	chlorides	NaCl
Oxy-acids	hypochlorous acid	HClO	hypchlorites	NaClO
	chlorous acid	$HClO_2$	chlorites	$NaClO_3$
	perchloric acid	$HClO_4$	perchlorates	$NaClO_4$

HYDROCHLORIC ACID HCl

Hydrochloric acid is a typical strong mineral acid with the characteristics described in Chapter 13. It is an aqueous solution of hydrogen chloride that is completely dissociated in water into separate hydrogen and chloride ions, H^+ and Cl^-.

The high concentration of H^+ ions gives it the properties of a strong acid able to digest living tissue. It is, therefore, surprising that the glands of the stomach can produce this strong acid in high concentration without damage to themselves or to the other cells lining the stomach wall.

That this secretion has mineral acid properties was demonstrated by an army surgeon, Dr. William Beaumont, in 1819. He studied a patient, Alexis St. Martin, a French Canadian hunter, with a stomach opening on to the abdominal wall caused accidently by a musket wound. He found, for example, that the hydrochloric acid produced in this stomach could digest a living frog's leg.

Hydrochloric acid, reacts with alkalis to form salts called chlorides (see Chapter 15). Its USP category is "pharmaceutic aid (acidifying agent)."

SODIUM CHLORIDE, NACl

see index

CHLORIDE IN THE HUMAN BODY

The chloride ion, Cl^- is the most abundant anion in our extracellular fluid, the normal blood level being 96 to 106 mmol/liter.

In the healthy body, this level is very accurately maintained. The normal daily intake is 10 to 15 g (approximately 200 to 300 mmol) in the form of sodium chloride and is balanced by a similar loss in urine, sweat and feces.

The mechanism by which the balance is achieved is essentially the same

as for sodium, although the distribution of sodium and chloride ions in the body is not identical. In certain conditions chloride loss exceeds intake, resulting in chloride depletion (hypochloremia). This occurs in excessive sweating, vomiting or diarrhea, also from excessive urinary loss as in diabetes mellitus, Addison's disease and certain infections, particularly pneumonia and pulmonary tuberculosis.

With the exception of Addison's disease the body responds to the low serum chloride by reducing or ceasing chloride excretion in the urine. So the finding of a low chloride concentration in the urine indicates hypochloremia. This is more directly demonstrated by serum electrolyte estimation.

The remedy for chloride depletion is to administer chloride, usually in the form of sodium chloride solution, either by mouth or by intravenous saline (sodium chloride) infusion.

A raised chloride (hyperch1oremia) can also occur namely when excretion is impaired, as in a urinary tract obstruction, severe kidney disease and cardiac failure.

HYPOCHLOROUS ACID, HClO

Hypochlorous acid differs greatly from hydrochloric acid. It is a weak acid and so in solution it dissociates only slightly into ions.

$$\underset{(aq)}{HClO} \longleftrightarrow \underset{(aq)}{H^+} + \underset{(aq)}{ClO^-}$$

HYPOCHLORITE

Hypochlorous acid solution is pale yellow. It is only stable if kept cool and in the dark. On heating or on exposure to light the concentrated solution yields oxygen and chlorine.

$$\underset{(aq)}{4HClO} = \underset{(g)}{O_2} + \underset{(g)}{2Cl_2} + \underset{(l)}{2H_2O}$$

The salts of hypochlorous acid are called hypochlorites. Since they are potent oxidizing agents they can be used for bleaching such as bleaching powder, which contains calcium hypochlorite, $Ca(ClO)_2$ and as antiseptics such as sodium hypochlorite, NaClO.

SODIUM HYPOCHLORITE, NaClO

Sodium hypochlorite is a powerful oxidizing agent. In its pure form it is extremely unstable, readily releasing oxygen and chlorine. Its power-

ful oxidizing activity makes it an effective bleaching agent and antiseptic.

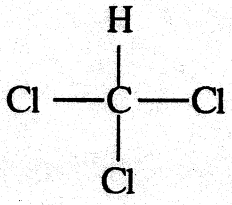
Milton's fluid is a 1% aqueous solution of sodium hypochlorite, also containing 16.5% sodium chloride. This fluid, at a strength of 12.5 cm^3/liter (1 in 80), is used to disinfect babies' bottles and nipples.

To ensure sterilization they must be completely immersed in a freshly prepared solution for 1 1/2 to 3 hours. Articles to be sterilized must first be thoroughly cleaned. If there is any milk or other protein present, the chlorine combines with it and is no longer available for disinfection.

Sodium hypochlorite is also the essential ingredient of Dakin's solution and several proprietary preparations, including Zonite (Dunbar Labs.), Chlorpactin (Guardian Chemical Corp.) and Chloros (I.C.I.).

CHLOROFORM, $CHCl^3$

Chloroform has a molecule like that of methane, CH_4 with three of the four hydrogen atoms replaced by chlorine.



Its three dimensional structure is described in Chapter 21.

Chloroform is a liquid with a low boiling point 61°C and a sweetish smell. It is not flammable but its vapor can burn. At one time it was widely used as a general anaesthetic but it can cause severe or even fatal liver damage and so it is no longer used for this purpose. Halothane, whose chemical structure is slightly similar has taken its place.

Chloroform is now mainly used as a preservative in liquid medicines. Its presence has little effect on an adult but does affect the susceptible nervous system of babies. So medicines for the newborn are made up without chloroform preservatives; this means that they do not keep and should be discarded after a week.

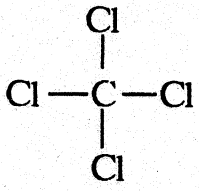
Chloroform exposed to air and sunlight undergoes gradual oxidation to poisonous phosgene.

$$2CHCl_3 + O_2 \xrightarrow{\text{(sunlight)}} \underset{\text{PHOSGENE}}{2COCl_2} + 2HCl$$

So chloroform is stored in brown bottles with 0.6 to 1.0% alcohol which destroys any phosgene which may be formed during storage.

CARBON TETRACHLORIDE, CCl_4

Carbon tetrachloride has a molecule like that of methane with all four of the hydrogen atoms replaced by chlorine.



Its three-dimensional structure is illustrated in Chapter 21. Like chloroform it is a liquid with a low boiling point (77°C) and a sweetish smell but, unlike chloroform, it is noncombustible. For this reason it is used in some fire-extinguishers, for example, Pyrene.

When sprayed on to a fire it vaporizes and the heavy vapor settles over the flames like a blanket, smothering the fire by excluding oxygen. Some phosgene is formed and so it should not be used in a confined space, particularly since carbon tetrachloride is an even more potent liver toxin than chloroform.

Carbon tetrachloride is a very effective solvent for grease and oil. It has been widely used as a cleaning fluid but inhalation of its vapor quite rapidly produces fatty degeneration of the liver.

BROMINE, Br_2

Bromine (Gr. bromos, stench) is the only nonmetallic element that exists in liquid form at ordinary temperatures. It is reddish brown in color. At room temperature it gives off a red vapor with a strong disagreeable odor, resembling chlorine, and is very irritating to the eyes and throat. If spilled on the skin it causes painful sores.

Bromine readily unites with many elements to form bromides. At one time bromides were widely prescribed as sedatives, a popular mixture being potassium bromide and chloral. They have now been superceded by a large variety of proprietary preparations. Bromides are still much used in photography and bromine compounds are incorporated into many medical preparations.

IODINE, I_2

Iodine (Gr. iodes, violet) is a grayish-black lustrous solid. When slightly warmed it gives off a blue-violet vapor with an irritating odor.

Iodine has considerable medical importance. It is an essential ingredient of our diet although only very small amounts are needed, about 0.15 mg/day. A trace of iodine (0.001%) is present in the sea. Its concentration is somewhat higher in fish, fish liver oil and seaweed. Ash from seaweed, called kelp, contains 1% iodine.

At one time goiter due to iodine deficiency was not uncommon in Switzerland whose borders are well away from the sea. Since 1922 iodized salt, containing 1 in 200,000 iodine in the form of potassium iodide, KI has been available and goiter has now become rare in Switzerland. No mother taking such salt during the last five months of pregnancy has given birth to a child with goiter.

Iodine in the form of iodine tincture (USP) or weak iodine solution (BP) has long been used as an antiseptic and is still considered as one of the more effective skin disinfectants. Weak iodine solution (BP) is a 2.5% solution of iodine (with 2.5% potassium iodide and 2.5% water) in ethyl alcohol. Iodine tincture (USP) is similar but contains 2% iodine. Both the alcohol and the iodine have an antiseptic action.

Like the other halogens, iodine kills bacteria by oxidizing them. This effect is diminished by the presence of organic matter. So the site to be treated should be previously cleaned. Iodine must not be used to cleanse the skin prior to vaccination as it kills vaccinia virus. Its use must also be avoided for patients who have a sensitivity to iodine.

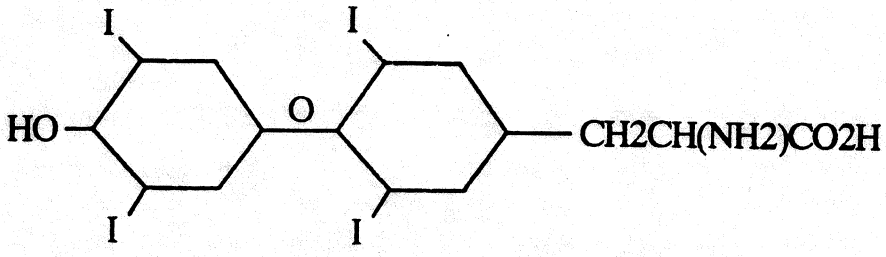
SODIUM IODIDE, NAL AND POTASSIUM IODIDE, KI

See Index.

IODINE IN THE BODY

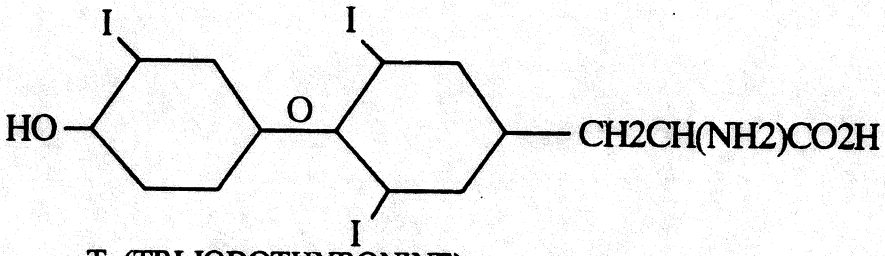
The iodine from the diet is taken up by the thyroid gland to make thyroxine which, combined with protein, is the main ingredient of the thyroid hormone.

Each molecule of thyroxine T_4 (tetra-iodothyronine) contains four atoms of iodine.



THYROXINE T_4 (TETRA-IODOTHYRONINE)

The other thyroid hormone, called T_3 or tri-iodothyronine, has a very similar structure but contains only three atoms of iodine.



T_3 (TRI-IODOTHYRONINE)

Although the formula of thyroxine appears rather complicated it shows a feature which is characteristic of many of the chemical compounds in the body. It has a definite shape: the four iodine atoms of T_4 protrude at the sides, like arms and legs; there is a hydroxyl OH group at one end, like a head, with a fairly long chain at the other end like a tail; in the middle is an oxygen atom, like a wasp-waist between the two hexagons. Each hexagon represents six carbon atoms arranged in a ring called a **benzene** ring.

There is no need to memorize the formula of thyroxine, only to note that it has a recognizable shape. For the shape of a molecule often plays an important part in its biological activity.

Both thyroxine T_4 and T_3 have marked biological activity. Without them every cell in the body tends to function less well than normal. A baby born without a functioning thyroid gland becomes a cretin. Both mental and physical development are retarded, and unless treated the baby will become a stunted imbecile.

Too much thyroid secretion (hyperthyroidism or thyrotoxicosis) causes the rate of metabolism (chemical reactions in cells) to be excessive. The heart beats too rapidly and the nervous system becomes over-excitable. Severe overactivity or underactivity of the thyroid gland is

usually obvious clinically. Minor abnormalities can be almost as serious over a long period of time but are much more difficult to detect. The estimation of protein bound iodine, T_4 and T_3 in the blood helps to demonstrate such abnormalities. It is also helpful to measure the amount of T_3 which can be taken up by the blood proteins (T_3 uptake).

PROTEIN BOUND IODINE, PBI

One way in which thyroid activity can be assessed is by measuring the amount of iodine which is bound to protein in the blood. The normal PBI level is 4-8 $\mu g/100\ cm^3$. It is raised when thyroid activity is excessive (hyperthyroidism) and reduced when it is deficient (hypothyroidism) as in cretinism and myxedema. Unfortunately, false results can occur from only slight contamination by iodine, either in the form of the element, as in iodine tincture, or in a compound such as lipiodol. The latter is used as a contrast medium in the X ray department and sufficient iodine may remain in a patient's serum to invalidate the test for 6 to 12 months.

THYROXINE T_4

Thyroxine T_4 (Tetra-iodothyronine) accounts for 90% of the protein bound iodine but its estimation is much less liable to be affected by iodine contamination. The normal serum thyroxine is 50 to 140 mmol/liter (4 to 11 $\mu g/100\ cm^3$). It is sometimes reported as thyroxine iodine with a normal value of 2.6 to 7.2 $\mu g/100\ cm^3$ (50 to 140 mmol/liter). Its estimation involves the use of radio-iodine (see below). Interpretation of results is similar to that for PBI.

T_3 TRI-IODOTHYRONINE UPTAKE

The measurement of serum thyroxine T_4 can be affected by various influences such as by pregnancy and the contraceptive pill. So it is necessary to have a means of checking it. Measurement of the T_3 uptake by sample of serum provides such a check. Radio-iodine (see below) incorporated into the T_3 so that the amount taken up can be conveniently measured.

The hormone thyroxine T_4 is bound to serum proteins which have limited number of binding sites on them. The more sites which are occupied by thyroxine T_4 the fewer sites there are left to combine with radioactive T_3 used in the test. Normally 25-36% of the sites are unoccupied and therefore free to combine with T_3. The increased amount thyroxine in thyrotoxicosis means that more sites are occupied. So the number of free sites is reduced to well below 25%. Conversely in

cretinism and myxedema the number of free binding sites is increased considerably above 36%.

FREE THYROXINE INDEX

The free thyroxine index provides a measure of the actual biological activity of thyroxine T_4, compensating for alterations due to pregnancy and oral contraceptives. It is calculated from the product of the T_4 level and the T_3 uptake. The normal range is 2.2 to 7.1. It is raised in thyrotoxicosis and reduced in myxedema and cretinism.

T_3 TRI-IODOTHYRONINE ESTIMATION

T_3 has four times the biological activity of T_4. Normally the ratio of T_4 to T_3 in blood is 50:1 but in some cases of thyrotoxicosis it is mainly the T_3 that is raised. This is best demonstrated by estimating the T_3 in blood; methods have recently been developed to do this.

RADIO-IODINE

Radio-iodine is a radioactive isotope of iodine. It has to be prepared artificially by bombarding iodine with subatomic particles. The atoms produced have an altered atomic weight and are unstable. Their radioactivity is the result of this instability. The radiation emitted is readily detected and measured by means of an instrument such as a Geiger counter.

Radio-iodine has a number of medical applications. The isotope most frequently used is ^{131}I which has a half-life of just over eight days. This is long enough to be usable but short enough not to be a radiation hazard if properly used. The half-life is the time taken for half of a radioactive element to disintegrate. Recently $^{132}1$ with a half-life of 2 to 3 hours has become available.

Medical uses of radio-iodine include the estimation of Thyroxine T_4 and of T_3 uptake, already described, also more recently of serum T_3 itself which may be of more biological importance than was previously thought. Another application is the radio-iodine test of thyroid activity in which the patient, after fasting for at least two hours, is given a measured dose of radio-iodine to drink; urine is collected at timed intervals over the next 48 hours.

In thyrotoxicosis more iodine than usual is taken up by the thyroid so that the amount excreted in the urine is reduced. The reverse occurs in myxedema. In selected cases the uptake by the thyroid can be measured

directly by a suitable counter. Radioiodine has also been used for the detection of deposits of thyroid cancer outside the thyroid gland and, occasionally, for the treatment of thyrotoxicosis and of thyroid cancer.

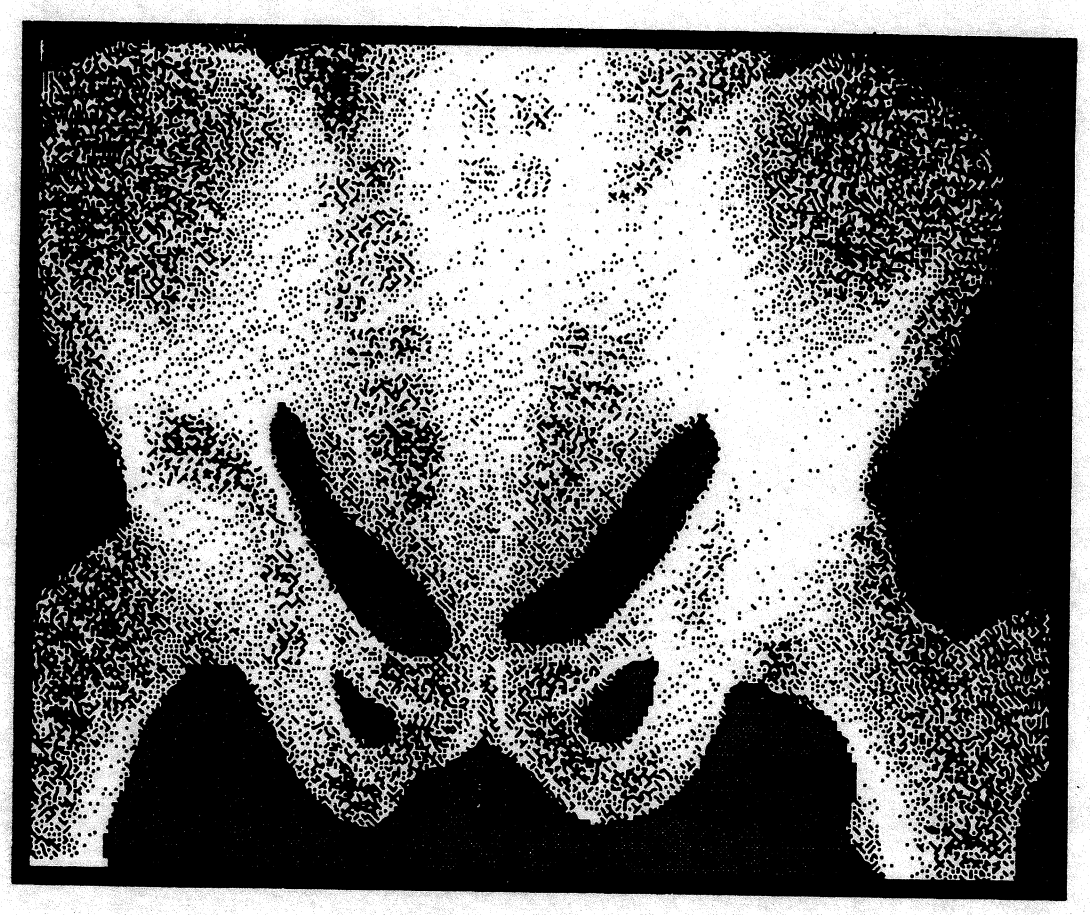


Figure 17.1
X-ray of pelvis; calcium in bones makes skeletal structure visible.

MAGNESIUM and CALCIUM

Magnesium and calcium are chemically related, both belonging to the group known as the alkaline earth metals. All the members of this group are of medical importance:

ELEMENT (SYMBOL)	ATOMIC NUMBER	ELECTRON CONFIGURATION	MEDICAL SIGNIFICANCE
Beryllium (Be)	4	2, 2	Beryllium compounds cause berylliosis, a disease affecting the lungs and soft tissues
Magnesium (Mg)	4	2, 8, 2	Essential for life, being the second most abundant intracellular metal after potassium. Affects contractility of muscle and excitability of nervous tissue.
Calcium (Ca)	20	2, 8, 8, 2	Gives bones their rigidity (and x-ray opacity, Fig. 17.1). Essential for blood coagulation. Affects muscle contractility and nervous excitability.
Strontium (Sr)	38	2, 8, 18, 8, 2	Strontium is treated by the body like calcium and deposited in the bone, as is radiostrontium which constitutes a long-acting radiation hazard.
Barium (Ba)	56	2, 8, 32, 18, 8, 2,	Radium is radioactive and used in the treatment of cancer.
Radium (Ra)	88	2, 8, 18, 32, 18, 8, 2	Radium is radioactive and used in the treatment of cancer.

ATOMIC STRUCTURE

As the above table indicates, all the alkaline earth metals have a similar atomic structure in that each has two electrons in the outer valency shell. The structures of magnesium and calcium can be represented thus:

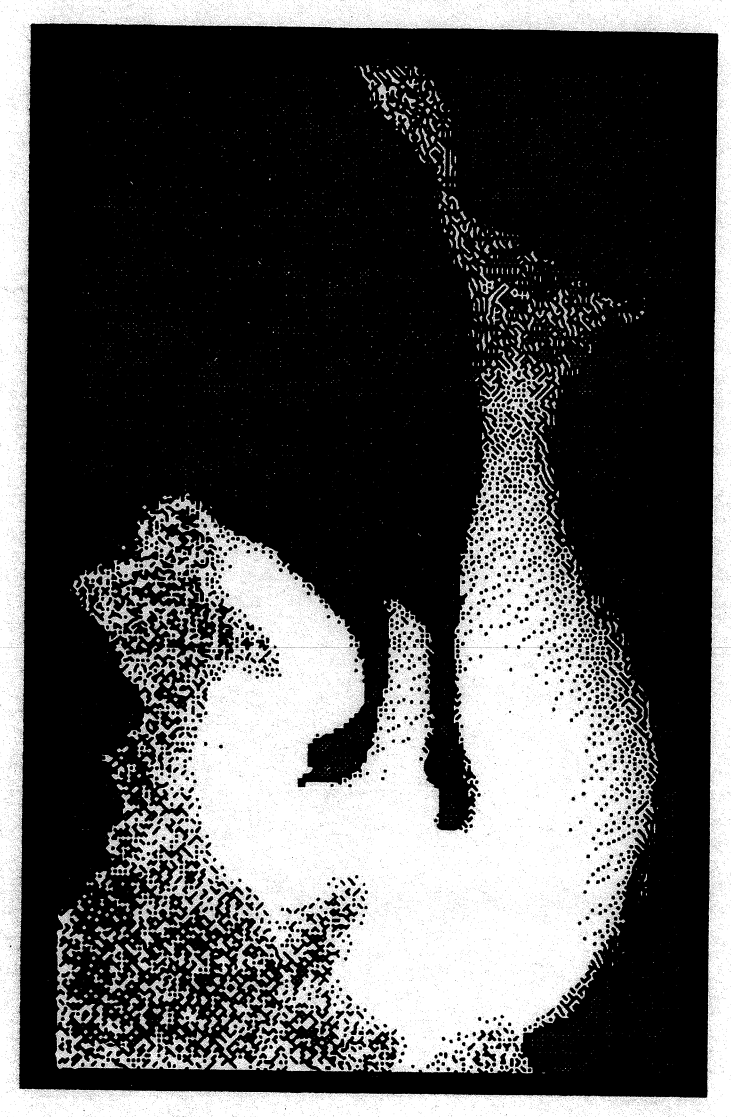
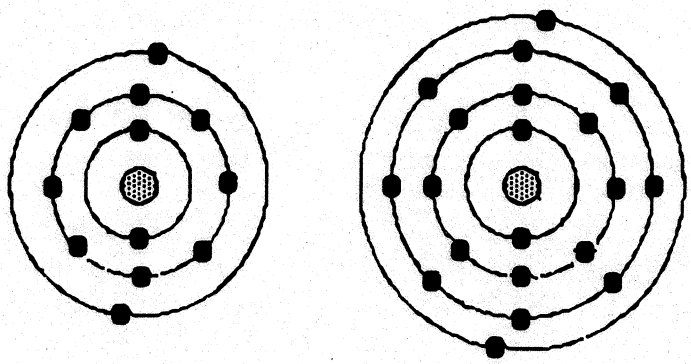


Figure 17.2
Barium meal showing stomach outline on the x-ray. Barium can also be seen in the esophagus, duodenum and upper jejunum.



	MAGNESIUM	CALCIUM
Atomic number	12	20
Electron configuration	2, 8, 2	2, 8, 8, 2

It can be seen that their atomic structure resembles that of the alkali metals sodium and potassium (see Chapter 15) with which, chemically, they have much in common.

Having two electrons in the outer shell they have a valency of two, as opposed to the one of the alkali metals.

Magnesium and calcium have a harder consistency than sodium and potassium and their hydroxides have a weaker alkalinity than those of the alkali metals.

Magnesium hydroxide, or Milk of Magnesia, for example, is widely used as an antacid for stomach complaints; in contrast sodium hydroxide is so alkaline that it is corrosive and can destroy the stomach wall.

Calcium differs from magnesium in having an extra electron shell with its octet of electrons intervening between the nucleus and the two outer valence electrons. The effect of this is partially to screen these outer electrons from the attracting force of the nucleus. As a result calcium releases these two electrons more readily than magnesium to form the simple cation Ca^{2+}.

Part of the calcium in our blood is present in this ionic form. If there is insufficient ionized calcium in our blood, our muscles go into involuntary spasm (tetany). Insufficient magnesium in the blood also produces tetany.

ATOMIC ABSORPTION

We have seen how atoms have a structure which is specific for each

individual element. As a result the atoms absorb light of a wavelength which is specific for each individual element. If a solution of a substance containing magnesium or calcium is aspirated into a flame, an atomic vapor is formed. When light of the appropriate wavelength is passed through the flame, part of it is absorbed. The amount of light absorbed is proportional to the density of the relevant atoms in the flame. This principle, known as atomic absorption spectroscopy, is now used in hospital laboratories for measuring the amount of magnesium and calcium in blood plasma.

MAGNESIUM

Magnesium (from Magnesia, in Thessaly) is a light, silvery-white metal. It is fairly tough and is one-third lighter than aluminum, with which it used in alloys for constructing aircraft, space rockets and missiles. It first isolated by Davy in 1808 although its existence as an element had previously been postulated by Black in 1755.

Magnesium is the eighth most abundant element by weight in the earth's crust, where it occurs in combined form as magnesite, dolomite, talc, asbestos and other minerals. The metal burns in air with a dazzling white flame to produce magnesium oxide.

$$\underset{(s)}{2Mg} + \underset{(g)}{O_2} = \underset{(s)}{2MgO}$$

This property is used in flashlight photography, flares and fireworks.

MEDICAL APPLICATIONS

A number of magnesium compounds are used in medicine. Probably the best known is magnesium hydroxide, $Mg(OH)_2$ (or "Milk of Magnesia) used as a mild antacid usually in the form of a suspension in water.

This suspension consists of particles, each of which is an aggregation of magnesium and hydroxyl ions. These particles remain suspended in watery solution for only a limited time, eventually sedimenting to the bottom of the bottle. So it is important to shake the bottle well before use.

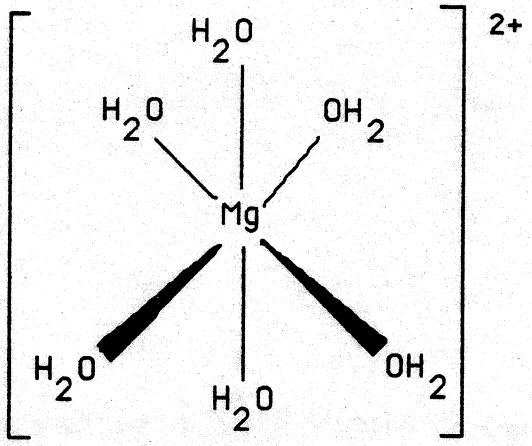
Its USP category is "antacid; cathartic." Another antacid much used in the treatment of gastric ulcers is magnesium trisilicate, $2MgO\text{-}3SiO_2$ (with water of crystallization). It neutralizes the excess acid rather slowly and it is long acting. It does not stimulate the stomach to produce

more acid and there is no danger of it causing alkalosis, both of which occur with sodium bicarbonate. Its category is "antacid" only.

Another magnesium compound of medical importance is magnesium sulfate, $MgSO_4$ which usually occurs combined with "water of crystallization" as $MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$ as in crystals of Epsom salts. For simplicity it may be imagined to consist of magnesium cations and sulfate anions.

$$Mg^{2+} \quad SO_4^{2-}$$

In fact, the magnesium ions probably combine with the water molecules to form complex cations which have to be visualized in three dimensions, like this:



The use of magnesium sulfate as an osmotic purgative and poultice has already been described (Chapter 14). Its USP category is "anticonvulsant; cathartic."

MAGNESIUM IN THE BODY

Nearly three-quarters of the magnesium in the body is present in the skeleton, combined with calcium and phosphorus to form the complex salts which give bone its rigidity. Most of the remainder is situated within the body cells where magnesium is the next most abundant cation to potassium.

Several enzymes require magnesium as a cofactor. The normal plasma magnesium is 0.6 to 1 mmol/liter (1.5 to 2.6 mg/100 cm^3).

A low serum magnesium causes neuromuscular irritability and tetany, similar to that caused by a low serum calcium. Raised serum magnesium can produce coma and, surprisingly, this effect is counteracted by giving

calcium in the form of calcium gluconate.

Magnesium is essential in the diet although the daily need is not known. A diet deficient in magnesium must be very rare, but magnesium deficiency can occur as a result of severe diarrhea, kidney failure or infected burns.

CALCIUM

Calcium (L. calx, lime) is a rather hard, silvery metal. Its compounds give rigidity to bone, teeth and shells. Although lime was prepared in the first century A.D. by the Romans, who called it calx, the metal was not isolated until 1808 by Davy. Calcium is the fifth most abundant element in the earth's crust. It occurs as limestone (calcium carbonate, $CaCO_3$), gypsum (calcium sulfate, $CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$), and other minerals. Chalk, derived from bygone shellfish, is also calcium carbonate.

Calcium metal burns with a yellow-red flame in air mainly to form calcium nitride with some oxide.

$$3Ca + N_2 = Ca_3N_2$$

CALCIUM NITRIDE

$$2Ca + O_2 = 2CaO$$

CALCIUM OXIDE

The yellow-red color of the flame is a characteristic of the metal and is used for estimating the amount of calcium in the blood by means of a flame photometer. The metal also combines readily with chlorine.

$$Ca + Cl_2 = CaCl_2$$

CALCIUM CHLORIDE

with sulfur

$$Ca + S = CaS$$

CALCIUM SULFIDE

and with hydrogen

$$Ca + H_2 = CaH_2$$

CALCIUM HYDRIDE

QUICK-LIME

Quick-lime is calcium oxide, CaO. It is usually made by heating calcium carbonate as limestone in a lime kiln (Fig. 17.4). Heat splits carbon dioxide off from the calcium carbonate, leaving calcium oxide.

$$\underset{\substack{\text{CALCIUM CARBONATE}\\\text{(LIMESTONE)}}}{CaCO_3\ (s)} = \underset{\substack{\text{CALCIUM OXIDE}\\\text{(QUICK-LIME)}}}{CaO\ (s)} + CO_2\ (g)$$

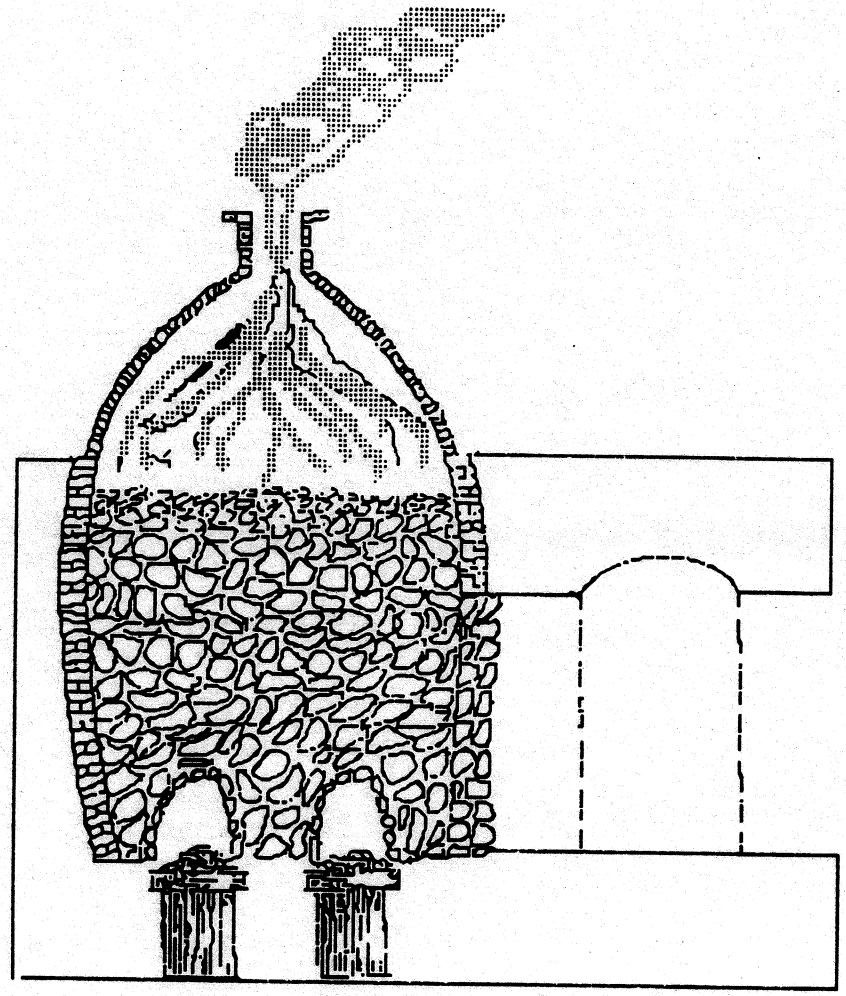


Figure 17.4
Lime kiln

Calcium oxide provides the basis of many products made by the chemical industry.

SLAKED LIME

Slaked lime is calcium hydroxide $Ca(OH)_2$. It is made by spraying water on to quick-lime.

$$\underset{(s)}{CaO} + \underset{(l)}{H_2O} = \underset{(s)}{Ca(OH)_2}$$

It has many industrial uses, such as in mortar, cement and the manufacture of bleaching powder which contains calcium hypochlorite, $Ca(ClO)_2$. Limewater is calcium hydroxide dissolved in water. It is a colorless solution. If carbon dioxide is passed into limewater it turns cloudy.

$$\underset{\substack{(aq)\\ \text{CALCIUM}\\ \text{HYDROXIDE}}}{Ca(OH)_2} + \underset{(g)}{CO_2} = \underset{\substack{(s)\\ \text{CALCIUM}\\ \text{CARBONATE}}}{CaCO_3} + \underset{(l)}{H_2O}$$

The cloudiness is due to the precipitate of calcium carbonate. The readiness with which limewater turns cloudy provides a sensitive means of detecting carbon dioxide, for example in expired air.

If carbon dioxide continues to be bubbled through the cloudy water it eventually clears again.

$$\underset{(s)}{CaCO_3} + \underset{(l)}{H_2O} + \underset{(g)}{CO_2} = \underset{\substack{(aq)\\ \text{CALCIUM}\\ \text{BICARBONATE}}}{Ca(HCO_3)_2}$$

The insoluble calcium carbonate is converted into soluble calcium bicarbonate.

CALCIUM CARBONATE

Calcium carbonate, $CaCO_3$ is the essential constituent of limestone and chalk. In purified form it is used medically as an antacid in the treatment of excessive gastric acidity.

$$CaCO_3 + 2HCl = CaCl_2 + H_2O + CO_2$$

It is also added to flour to provide adequate calcium in the diet. Its USP category is "antacid."

CALCIUM CHLORIDE

Calcium chloride, $CaCl_2$ is a soluble calcium salt. It is used in the

treatment of children suffering from calcium deficiency, given by mouth. In the past it was used by injection for the treatment of tetany, in adults and children, due to low blood calcium.

However, sometimes it has the unfortunate effect of causing the heart to contract and stop ("calcium rigor"). For this reason, for intravenous use calcium chloride has now been replaced by calcium gluconate which does not produce such a high concentration of calcium ions. Its USP category is "calcium replenisher."

PLASTER OF PARIS

Plaster of Paris is a form of calcium sulfate known as the hemihydrate $2CaSO_4.H_2O$ (sometimes written $CaSO_4.1/2H_2O$). When plaster of Paris is mixed with water it rapidly sets and hardens.

$$\underset{\text{PLASTER OF PARIS}}{2CASO_4 \cdot H_2O} + 3H_2O \longrightarrow \underset{\text{GYPSUM}}{2(CASO_4 \cdot 2H_2O)}$$

In the process of being converted into gypsum the plaster of Paris expands slightly.

CALCIUM AND THE HUMAN BODY

About 99% of the calcium in our body is in our bones and gives them rigidity. The remaining 1% has a number of very important functions.

In the extracellular fluid the presence of calcium ions is critical in preventing excessive excitability of the nerves and muscle; it also plays a vital role in blood clotting.

Intracellularly, calcium takes part in a number of enzyme systems, including those responsible for conducting nerve impulses and for causing muscular contraction.

A healthy adult requires about 40 mmol (1.6 g) of calcium daily. Up to 125 mmol (5 g) daily are needed during pregnancy and lactation and also for growing children. Cow's milk contains 15 mmol (0.6 g)/pint, mainly as calcium phosphate; cheese contains 20 mmol (0.8 g) calcium/100 g. Flour has added calcium carbonate so that bread can be an important dietetic source. Unfortunately, flour of high extraction (85% or more) contains phytic acid which interferes with calcium absorption. In order to absorb calcium it is vital to have adequate vitamin D in the diet.

Absorption of calcium occurs in the small intestine. It is favored by the relatively high hydrogen ion concentration (low pH) which is found in the upper part of the small intestine due to the carry-over of acid from the stomach.

In an acid solution the calcium phosphate formed is soluble whereas in an alkaline solution the phosphate and carbonate produced are insoluble, which results in less absorption in the lower small intestine.

Another important factor is the rate of passage of the intestinal contents. In intestinal hurry, as in coeliac disease, there is insufficient time for absorption of either vitamin D or calcium, resulting in rickets or osteomalacea (adult rickets), with softening and distortion of the bones.

The normal blood calcium is 2.25 to 2.75 mmol/l. (It is still sometimes expressed as 9.0 to 11.0 mg/100 ml.).

This blood level is mainly controlled by the parathyroid glands which are situated just behind and below the thyroid gland. The hormone secreted by these glands, called parathormone, mobilizes calcium from the bones thus increasing the blood level; it also facilitates the absorption of calcium from the small intestine.

Accidental removal of parathyroid glands has occasionally occurred during thyroidectomy (surgical removal of the thyroid gland). It produces a low serum calcium and if the ionized calcium is sufficiently reduced, it causes tetany, characterized by increased nervous irritability and associated muscle spasms.

Sometimes a parathyroid gland tumor occurs which secretes too much parathormone; too much calcium is then mobilized, with a corresponding rise in serum calcium and calcium excretion in the urine, resulting in the bones becoming unduly decalcified and softened (osteitis fibrosa cystica or hyperparathyroidism).

There is another hormone called calcitonin (or thyrocalcitonin) that is secreted by the thyroid gland. The effect of this is the opposite of parathormone in that it promotes the deposition of calcium in the bones from the blood.

The bones consist of fibrous connective tissue (collagen) which is impregnated with calcium salts, mainly calcium phosphate.

The process by which the calcium and the phosphate ions in solution in the blood are converted into the hard structure of bone involves the

bone cells, called osteoblasts, and an enzyme called phosphatase, but the details are not yet fully understood.

The calcium salts in bone are arranged in a crystalline lattice which presents a very large surface area to the interstitial fluid. This means that not only can calcium and sodium be very readily mobilized from bone but also that other substances such as strontium (including radioactive strontium) and lead can readily be laid down in bone.

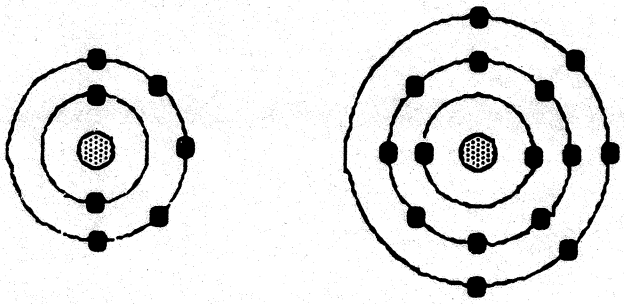
NITROGEN and PHOSPHORUS

Both nitrogen and phosphorus are important elements in medical chemistry. Nitrogen is something of a paradox. It is an inert gas, remaining uncombined in the air, and yet it forms very large numbers of compounds, including proteins which are the essence of life.

Phosphorus is a far more reactive element. Like nitrogen it also forms numerous compounds, including the complex phosphoproteins in our brains and the inorganic phosphates which help to buffer the pH in our plasma.

ATOMIC STRUCTURE

Nitrogen and phosphorus are group 5 elements, that is, they occur in group 5 of the periodic table. These elements are characterized by the presence of five electrons in the outer valence shell.

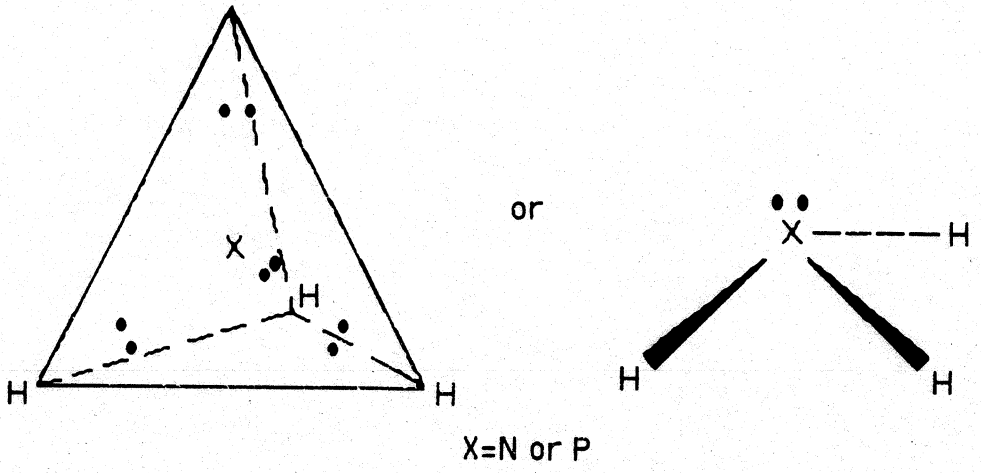


NITROGEN PHOSPHORUS

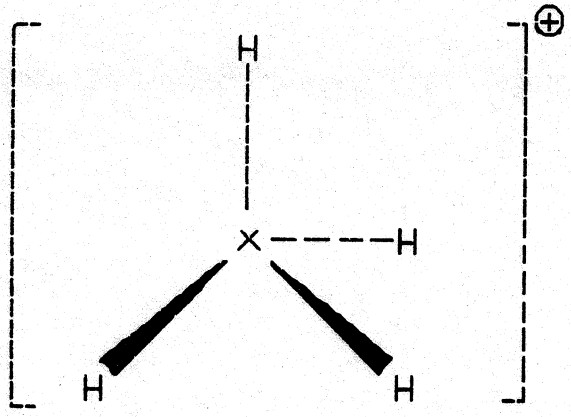
Electron configuration	2, 5	2, 8, 5
Atomic number	7	15

It will be remembered that eight electrons in the outer shell is the stable (rare gas) configuration. Each nitrogen and phosphorus atom forms three covalent bonds with other atoms in order to acquire a stable octet. Ammonia, NH_3 and phosphine, PH_3 illustrate this tervalency of nitrogen and phosphorus.

The stereostructures of these molecules may be considered as tetrahedral with the group 5 atom at the center, a hydrogen alone at three of the apexes, and a lone pair of electrons at the fourth apex.

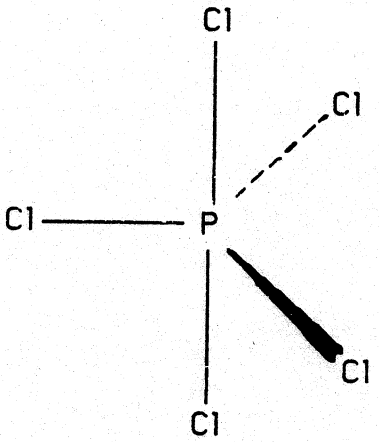


If the lone pair is shared with a hydrogen ion, H^+, the ammonia molecule is converted into the ammonium ion, NH_4^+, and the phosphine molecule into the Phosphonium ion, PH_4^+. A fourth hydrogen atom then occupies the site previously held by the lone pair.



The NH_4 and PH_4 groupings can only exist in the form of ions as in ammonium chloride, $NH_4^+Cl^-$, and phosphonium iodide, $PH_4^+I^-$. An atom of phosphorus, being larger than a nitrogen atom, can also accommodate ten electrons in its outer shell and is therefore able to form five covalent bonds with other atoms, as it does in phosphorus pentachloride, PCl_5.

The structure of this molecule may be compared to a three-bladed propeller on a vertical spindle.



NITROGEN

Nitrogen (L. nitrum, a salt + L. genes, forming) is a colorless, odorless, and tasteless gas, that neither burns nor, in general, supports combustion. It forms 78% of the air by volume. It was discovered by Daniel Rutherford in 1772, although at that time several other chemists were studying the nature of air from which the oxygen had been removed, calling it "burnt air" or "dephlogisticated air."

Nitrogen appeared so inactive chemically that Lavoisier called it "azote" (without life). Yet it is an essential element in all proteins, the substances on which all life depends.

Nitrogen compounds provide food, fertilizers, poisons and explosives. Liquid nitrogen, which boils at -196°C and freezes at -210°C, is clear, colorless and odorless, resembling water. It is used as a refrigerant; for example in preserving human red blood cells, which may be stored indefinitely in this deep frozen state. Liquid nitrogen is used extensively in missile work for purging compounds and insulating space chambers. In the oil field nitrogen gas produced from liquid nitrogen provides the pressure for forcing up the crude petroleum.

Nitrogen, like oxygen, is prepared commercially by fractional distillation of liquid air. Its cost varies from a few cents to over \$3/100 ft^3, depending on its purity. In the laboratory nitrogen can be prepared by heating an aqueous solution of ammonium nitrite, NH_4NO_2.

$$\underset{(aq)}{NH_4^+} + \underset{(aq)}{NO_2^-} = \underset{(g)}{N_2} + \underset{(g)}{2H_2O}$$

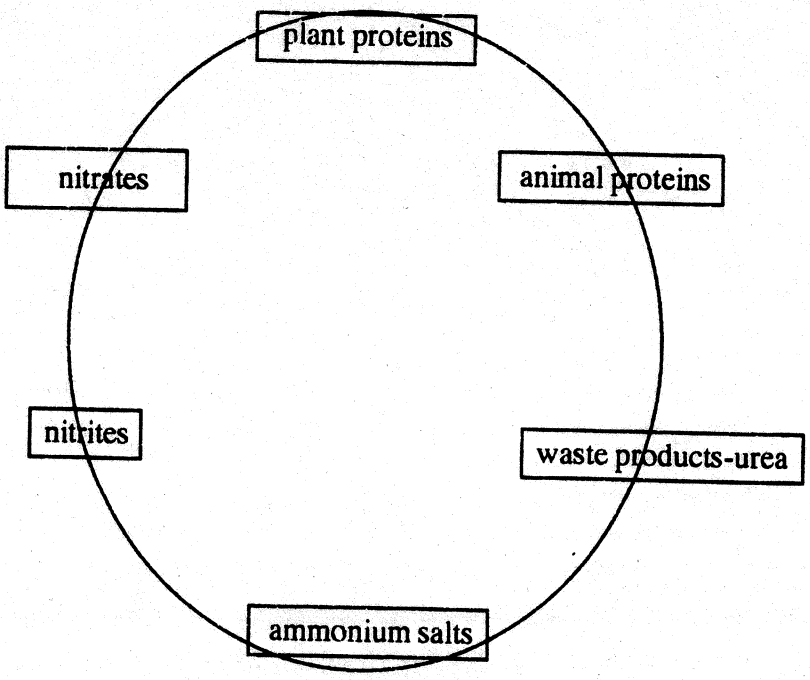
Since ammonium nitrite is not usually available as such in the laboratory its component ions NH_4^+ and NO_2^- can be obtained in solution by mixing equimolar proportions of ammonium chloride, $NH_4^+Cl^-$ and sodium nitrite, $Na^+NO_2^+$ in water.

Although nitrogen is, in general, an inert element it will combine directly with magnesium, calcium or lithium when heated, to form their nitrides. If a mixture of nitrogen and oxygen is subjected to electric sparks it forms first nitric oxide, NO and then nitrogen dioxide, NO_2. At ordinary temperatures and pressures nitrogen scarcely combines with hydrogen at all, but when they are heated together under pressure with a catalyst a 60% yield of ammonia is produced. Ammonia produced in this way is widely used in industry to make nitric acid, fertilizers and drugs. Ammonia is also used by the electronics industry as a blanketing medium for preparing transistors.

NITROGEN CYCLE

Plants make their proteins from nitrates in the soil. These nitrates are partly replenished by the following cycle of events, known as the "nitrogen cycle."

Plant proteins are eaten by animals, including humans, and converted into the particular proteins which the animal requires. Some animals get their proteins indirectly from plants by eating other animals. The waste products of the animals, if returned to the soil, are broken down into ammonium salts which are converted by bacteria in the soil first into nitrites and then into nitrates.



Of course, much sewage is not returned to the soil and so, to maintain the cycle, fertilizers containing ammonium salts and nitrates must be used. Some nitrate is replaced naturally after thunderstorms. Lightning causes a little nitrogen and oxygen in the air to combine to form nitric oxide.

$$N_2 + O_2 \longleftrightarrow 2NO$$

When this oxide cools it combines with oxygen in the air to form nitrogen dioxide.

$$2NO + O_2 = 2NO_2$$

This dissolves in rainwater to form nitric acid.

$$3NO_2 + H_2O = 2HNO_3 + NO$$

This acid then reacts with substances in the soil, for example, carbonates to produce nitrates.

$$CaCO_3 + 2HNO_3 = Ca(NO_3)_2 + H_2O + CO_2$$

Most plants can only use nitrogen if it is provided for them in the form of inorganic salts, namely, nitrates (salts of nitric acid, HNO_3), nitrites (salts of nitrous acid, HNO_2) and ammonium compounds.

There are, however, certain plants which are able to use nitrogen from the air. These are the leguminosae, which include peas, beans, vetches. On the roots of these plants little nodules can be seen (Fig. 18.1).

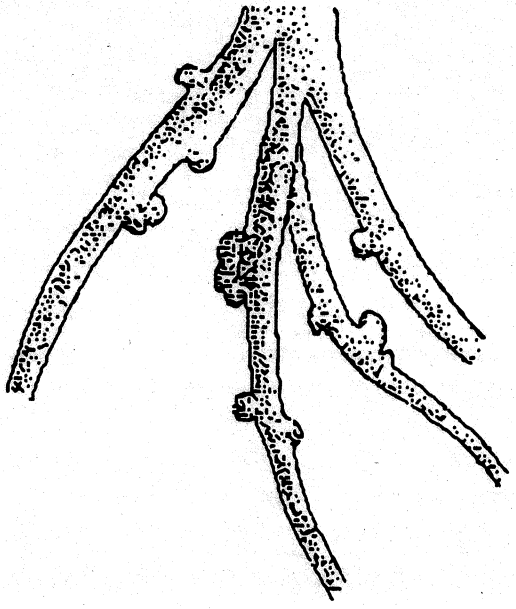


Figure 18.1
Root nodules

These contain nitrogen-fixing bacteria. They convert the elemental nitrogen from the air into inorganic nitrogen-containing salts which can then be used by the plants.

Soil bacteria thus play a vital part in the nitrogen cycle, both by fixing nitrogen from the air and also by breaking down dead animal and vegetable matter. Without bacteria life on this earth would not be possible.

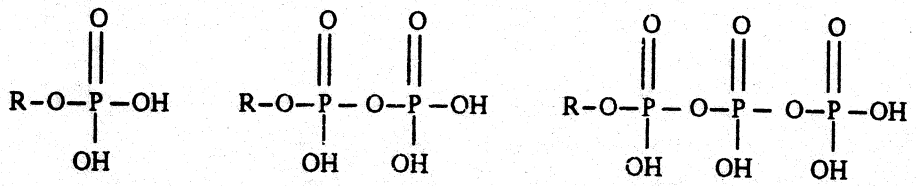
PHOSPHORUS

Phosphorus (Gr. phosphoros, light-bearing) atoms, can be arranged in several different ways so that there are a number of different physical forms, or allotropes (Gr. allo, other + Gr. tropos, form), of the element: the three principal ones being white (or yellow), red (or violet), and black. The element never occurs free in nature but its compounds are widely distributed. It occurs in minerals: for example phosphate rock is an important source of the element. It also occurs in all living organisms, both animal and vegetable. It is an essential ingredient of cell protoplasm, blood plasma, bone, and brain.

Phosphorus was discovered by Brand in 1669 who prepared it from urine. White phosphorus is a waxy solid, usually yellowish white in color but transparent and colorless when pure. It is highly poisonous, about 50 mg being a fatal dose. If exposed to air it catches fire spontaneously. It must therefore be kept under water and handled with forceps in order to avoid burns. White phosphorus is phosphorescent. If exposed to sunlight or when heated in its own vapor it is converted to red phosphorus. In this form it is no longer phosphorescent, nor does it catch fire spontaneously and it is less dangerous. Red phosphorus is used in the manufacture of safety matches, fireworks, incendiary shells, smoke bombs, tracer bullets, pesticides, and phosphoric acid, H_3PO_4. Large amounts of phosphoric acid are used to make superphosphate fertilizers. Bone ash, which is mainly calcium phosphate, $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ is used in the production of bone china.

MONO-, DI- and TRI-PHOSPHATES

These are compounds with the following general formulas:



MONOPHOSPHATE
referred to later as
R — Ⓟ

DIPHOSPHATE
referred to later as
R — Ⓟ — Ⓟ

TRIPHOSPHATE
referred to later as
R — Ⓟ — Ⓟ — Ⓟ

R represents a group of atoms. Important examples in body chemistry are AMP (adenosine monophosphate), ADP (adenosine diphosphate) and ATP (adenosine triphosphate).

PHOSPHORUS IN THE BODY

The minimum phosphorus requirement for an adult is approximately 1 g (32 mmol) daily. The main dietary source is provided by phosphates, both inorganic and organic.

Foods which are rich in phosphorus include eggs, milk, cheese, almonds, and fish, especially sardines.

The phosphorus in flour is mainly unavailable due to the presence of phytic acid which interferes with the absorption of phosphates, calcium and iron.

Inorganic phosphate is readily absorbed from the gut in regions where the reaction is slightly acid. An alkaline medium tends to convert phosphates into an insoluble form such as calcium phosphate.

The normal serum inorganic phosphate is 0.8 to 1.4 mmol/liter (2.5 to 4.4 mgP/100 cm^3). Organic phosphorus compounds are more abundant in the red cells than in the serum. Phosphorus is excreted mainly by the kidneys. About 60% of the daily intake is excreted in the urine and so the amount excreted varies considerably, according to the diet, namely 11 to 32 mmol/24 hr. (340 to 1000 mgP/24 hr.).

Phosphates are intimately involved in the calcification of bones and teeth whose rigidity is essentially due to impregnation of the organic collagen matrix by hydroxy-apatite, $Ca(OH)_2 \cdot 3Ca_3(PO4)_2$.

The enzyme phosphatase plays an important part in this calcification process. Parathormone, the hormone secreted by the parathyroid glands,

mobilizes calcium and phosphate ions from the bones, and promotes the excretion of phosphate in the urine.

Excess secretion of parathormone, as in a parathyroid tumor, causes excess mobilization of mineral from the bones, resulting in osteitis fibrosa cystica with weakening of the bones.

Adequate vitamin D in the diet is required to promote the absorption of calcium from the gut together with the maintenance in the blood of normal calcium and phosphate levels. In rickets due to vitamin D deficiency in the diet and osteomalacia due to poor intestinal absorption of vitamin D, the serum calcium and phosphate are both low. The bones are unduly soft due to inadequate hydroxy-apatite deposition and so skeletal deformities result.

The pH of the blood is maintained within very narrow limits. Phosphate buffers provide an important mechanism for maintaining this constancy of the pH. Plasma contains dihydrogen phosphate ions, $H_2PO_4^-$ and the less acid monohydrogen phosphate ions, HPO_4^{2-} in the ratio of about 1:5.

In the urine the ratio is reversed and is normally 9:1, but when there is excess acid to be eliminated the ratio may rise to 50:1. This appears to be achieved by the following reaction occurring in the proximal tubules of the kidney:

HPO_4^{2-}	+	H_2CO_3	$H_2PO_4^-$	+	HCO_3^-
MONOHYDROGEN PHOSPHATE ION		CARBONIC ACID	DIHYDROGEN PHOSPHATE ION		BICARBONATE ION

The dihydrogen phosphate ions are excreted in the urine and the bicarbonate ions are returned to the plasma to provide additional base reserve.

Organic phosphorus compounds are numerous and include phosphoproteins (especially in the brain), phospholipids (in every cell in the body), and the adenosine phosphates which provide the energy transfer currency in cellular respiration.

IRON and RELATED METALS

There are a number of metals in the body that are of great importance although they are present in relatively small quantities. Of these iron is present in the greatest amount, enough to make a fairly large nail. It is best known as an essential part of the hemoglobin molecule, required for the transport of oxygen, but it is also involved in a number of enzyme systems, particularly those involved in tissue respiration.

Other vital metals include manganese, cobalt, copper, and zinc. The importance of some of these metals has only been appreciated fairly recently.

Cobalt, for example, is an essential element in vitamin B_{12} (cyanocobalamin). Inadequate absorption of vitamin B_{12} leads to pernicious anemia.

The metals named above are chemically related. They all belong to the same group of 10 elements forming the first "transition series" of the periodic table.

ATOMIC STRUCTURE

Manganese, iron, cobalt, nickel, and zinc all have two electrons in their outer (4th or N) electron shell. The difference between them in electron configuration lies in the number of electrons in their 3rd or M electron shells.

Copper belongs to the same family, although it has only one electron in its outer shell. The gradual transition in their atomic structure is clearly shown below.

		NUMBER OF ELECTRONS IN SHELL			
ELEMENT	ATOMIC NUMBER	K (lst)	L (2nd)	M (3rd)	N (4th)
manganese	25	2	8	13	2
iron	26	2	8	14	2
cobalt	27	2	8	15	2
nickel	28	2	8	16	2
copper	29	2	8	18	1
zinc	30	2	8	18	2

Their similarity in atomic structure is reflected in the similarities in their physical and chemical characteristics.

PROPERTIES

HARDNESS

These metals are all rather hard metals and being relatively stable, they provide useful structural material, either as elemental metals or as alloys, for example, bronze (copper, tin), brass (copper, zinc), and stainless steel (iron, carbon, chromium and sometimes nickel and cobalt).

VALENCE

As might be expected from the number of electrons in the outer N shell, copper can have a valence of 1 and the rest a valence of 2. But apart from zinc all these elements exhibit more than one valence. This is because some electrons in the 3rd or M shell can also act as valence electrons. With zinc this does not happen, so it has a valence of 2 only.

COLOR OF COMPOUNDS

These metals can form colored complex ions, for example, potassium hexacyanoferrate(III) (potassium ferricyanide) is ruby red and owes its color to the complex hexacyanoferrate(III) (ferricyanide) ion, $Fe(CN)_6^{3-}$ which has a three-dimensional structure like this:

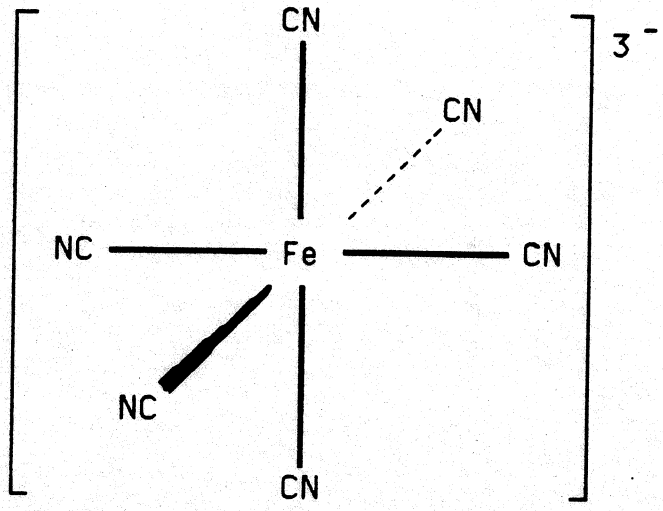
The color is due to the ability of these complex ions to absorb light of certain wavelengths in the visible spectrum. The remaining light is deprived of the absorbed wavelengths and gives the substance its color.

To be able to absorb light radiation a substance must have an electronic structure which is able to accept the additional energy involved. With the exception of zinc the ions have just such a structure. Electrons are raised to a higher energy level by the absorbed radiation. If no radiation is absorbed a substance appears white under normal lighting.

CATALYTIC ACTIVITY

These metals can act as catalysts, either in elemental form, for example iron accelerating the formation of ammonia from nitrogen and hydrogen, or in simple inorganic compounds, for example manganese dioxide, MnO_2 facilitating the release of oxygen from heated potassium chlorate, or else in complex organic molecules such as cytochrome oxidase, an enzyme containing iron which facilitates the utilization of oxygen in

tissue respiration. In the body's chemistry these complex catalysts, known as enzymes, play a very important part.



MANGANESE

Manganese (L. magnes, magnet) is a gray-white metal resembling iron but harder and very brittle. It is used in alloys, for example, in steel, to which it gives great toughness, and in ferromagnetic alloys. Amethysts owe their purple-violet color to the presence of manganese.

In the body, manganese is present in a considerable number of enzymes, for example, choline esterase, the enzyme responsible for removing acetyl choline as soon as soon as it has completed one of its many functions such as the conduction of stimuli from nerves to muscles, causing the muscles to contract. Without choline esterase the muscles would be unable to relax again.

Manganese deficiency occurs in animals, causing sterility in male rats and failure of lactation in female rats; pregnant sows with manganese deficiency may reabsorb the fetus or produce undersized weakly offspring; in chicks manganese deprivation causes deformities of the legs and spine.

Manganese deficiency has not been demonstrated in man.

Excess manganese interferes with iron absorption, causing iron deficiency anemia.

POTASSIUM PERMANGANATE, $KMnO_4$

Potassium permanganate is a powerful oxidizing agent and as such is an effective antiseptic. Crystals of potassium permanganate are purple prisms which dissolve in water to give a purple solution. When used as an antiseptic foot bath it tends to stain the feet a brownish color due to the formation of brown manganese dioxide, MnO_2.

The oxidizing action of potassium permanganate is related to the readiness with which the permanganate ion MnO_2 accepts electrons in the presence of hydrogen ions or water molecules. Its USP category is topical anti-infective.

IRON, Fe

Iron (Anglo-saxon, iron), plays an important part in our body's chemistry and in our daily lives. It is widely distributed throughout the universe, occurring in many types of stars, including our sun. In the earth's crust, it is the fourth most abundant element by weight and is probably one of the main constituents of the earth's core.

Extraction of iron from its ores dates back to the early Eastern Mediterranean civilizations of about 2300 B.C. The extraction process, known as smelting, consists essentially of the reduction of iron oxides, such as magnetite, Fe_3O_4 and hematite, Fe_2O_3, or iron(II) carbonate (ferrous carbonate) such as siderite, $FeCO_3$ to metallic iron in varying degrees of purity. The reduction is accomplished by carbon monoxide that is produced by heating coke in a limited air supply.

$$\underset{\substack{\text{FERRIC}\\\text{OXIDE}}}{Fe_2O_3} + \underset{\substack{\text{CARBON}\\\text{MONOXIDE}}}{3CO} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{IRON}}{2Fe} + \underset{\substack{\text{CARBON}\\\text{DIOXIDE}}}{3CO_2}$$

In compounds, iron (L. ferrum) can have a valence of either two or three. The term ferrous indicates a valence of two, for example, ferrous chloride, $FeCl_2$, and ferric indicates a valence of 3, for example, ferric chloride, $FeCl_3$. Nowadays ferrous and ferric compounds are called iron(II) and iron(III) compounds, respectively, the roman numerals indicating the valence.

Ferrous, iron(II), salts are much more readily absorbed from the intestine than are ferric, iron(III) salts. So oral preparations for the treatment of iron deficiency anemia are almost always iron(II) compounds, the one most commonly used being iron(II) sulfate.

IRON(II) SULFATE

The crystals of iron(II) sulfate contain 7 moles of water of crystallization to each mole of the salt ($FeSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$). Crude iron(II) sulfate is known as Green Vitriol or Green Copperas.

In purified form it consists of transparent green crystals. When dissolved in water it forms an acidic solution, pH less than 7.

Tablets of iron(II) sulfate (e.g. Fersolate, Glaxo) provide one of the most convenient and economical ways of prescribing iron for adults and are usually well tolerated. Its USP category is "hematinic." Constipation is occasionally produced. Larger doses can cause diarrhea. By adjustment of the dose an acceptable balance can usually be obtained.

Gastro-intestinal disturbances can be minimized by film-coated tablets which only release the iron(II) sulfate slowly, as in Ferrogradumet (Abbott Labs.). Ferrogradumet C (Abbott Labs) is similar but contains vitamin C to aid iron absorption.

On occasions sugar-coated tablets of iron(II) sulfate have been taken by children as sweets, with disastrous results. Large doses have frequently proved fatal. Smaller doses can cause severe gastrointestinal irritation with hematemesis (vomiting of blood), shock and rapid pulse.

The toxicity of iron(II) sulfate is largely due to the fact that it is ionized into Fe^{2+} and SO_4^{2-} and being soluble gives a high concentration of iron(II) ions.

The effect on the body is most marked in children, for whom alternatives such as iron(II) carbonate, iron(II) gluconate or Sytron (a complex iron(III) salt, Parke Davis) are usually given.

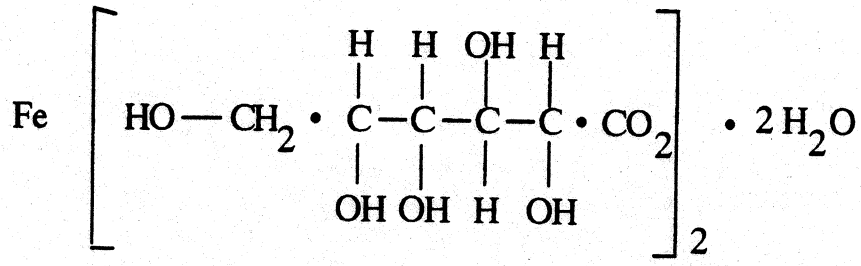
IRON(II) CARBONATE, $FeCO_3$

Iron(II) carbonate is insoluble in water but dissolves slowly in the stomach and gives a low concentration of iron(II) ions. Ferrodic (Allen and Hanbury) tablets contain iron(II) carbonate and vitamin C. These tablets were used in a trial involving 160 children conducted by one of the authors and found to be a satisfactory way of administering iron.

IRON(II) GLUCONATE

Iron(II) gluconate ionizes only slightly in solution. If the g]uconate radical is represented by Gl, the formula of iron(II) gluconate may be

expressed as $FeGl_2 \cdot 2H_2O$.



FERROUS (IRON(II)) GLUCONATE

PARENTERAL IRON

Where absorption of iron from the intestine is seriously impaired, it is necessary to have iron preparations which can be injected.

Imferon (Lakeside Labs) is one example. It consists of iron(III) hydroxide, $Fe(OH)_3$ combined with dextrans. It was originally designed for intramuscular injection but was found to cause brown staining at the site of injection. So it is now usually given intravenously, often in the form of an infusion with normal saline (5% dextrose has been used instead of saline but can lead to venous thrombosis).

Animal experiments have indicated that iron injections might cause tumor formation but this has not been observed in humans. Jectofer (Astra Pharmaceutical Prod., Inc.) is another iron preparation which is widely used for injecting or infusion. Its chemical composition is complicated (iron sorbital citric acid complex).

IRON METABOLISM

Iron is present in meat, especially liver and kidney, also eggs, cocoa, chocolate, prunes, and some vegetables, such as spinach.

In general, the absorption of iron from organic sources tends to be poor but there are exceptions such as beef.

Iron from white flour is more readily available than from whole-meal flour.

Inorganic phosphate in the diet impairs the absorption of both calcium and iron by promoting the formation of insoluble salts.

It should be noted that milk contains extremely little iron. In some countries infants are breast-fed for 2 to 3 years and develop iron-

deficiency anemia. The newborn infant has more hemoglobin than it requires. So the excess red cells are broken down and the iron is stored. This stored iron normally tides the infant over the first few months of life until the child is weaned.

During growth, iron is required for the formation of hemoglobin in the red cells, myoglobin in the muscles, cytochrome in all cells and a number of other enzymes. In males, the iron requirement is greatest at 15 to 16 years. In females, the iron requirement is greatest during the course of reproductive life to replace iron lost during menstruation and pregnancy. It is during the last three months of pregnancy that the fetus takes the greatest amount of iron from the mother, doubled in the case of twins.

For an adult male 90/μmol (5 mg) of iron a day is more than adequate but this needs to be doubled for females, the exact amount depending on the size of the menstrual loss and the requirement being reduced after the menopause.

Absorption of iron is mainly from the small intestine. Studies with radioactive iron ^{59}Fe, have shown that absorption of iron is more than normally efficient in people with iron deficiency. This is because the normal person is protected against absorbing too much iron by a mechanism which is essentially chemical.

Iron is absorbed into the cells of the intestinal mucosa in the iron(II) (Fe^{2+}) state. When it has been absorbed, it is oxidized into the iron(III) (Fe^{3+}) state in the form of iron(III) hydroxide $Fe(OH)_3$. This combines with a protein, apoferritin, to form an iron-protein complex, ferritin. In this form it is temporarily stored in the mucosal cells until needed (Fig. 19.1). If no free apoferritin is available, then the absorption of iron stops.

Iron is unusual in that the amount excreted is very small and cannot be regulated. So the only method of controlling the body iron is at the point of absorption.

Iron is stored in the liver, also in the form of ferritin. The transfer of iron from intestinal mucosa to the liver and also the tissue cells involves a plasma protein (transferrin). The tissue which takes up most of the iron is the bone marrow where it is required for the formation of red cells.

It should be noted that the main source of iron for making new red cells is from the breakdown of old cells. The iron is continually being

recycled. Only a very small proportion of the total iron turnover is usually from the diet, just enough to make good any loss, for example, from hemorrhage, provided this is not excessive. Any severe hemorrhage soon leads to iron deficiency.

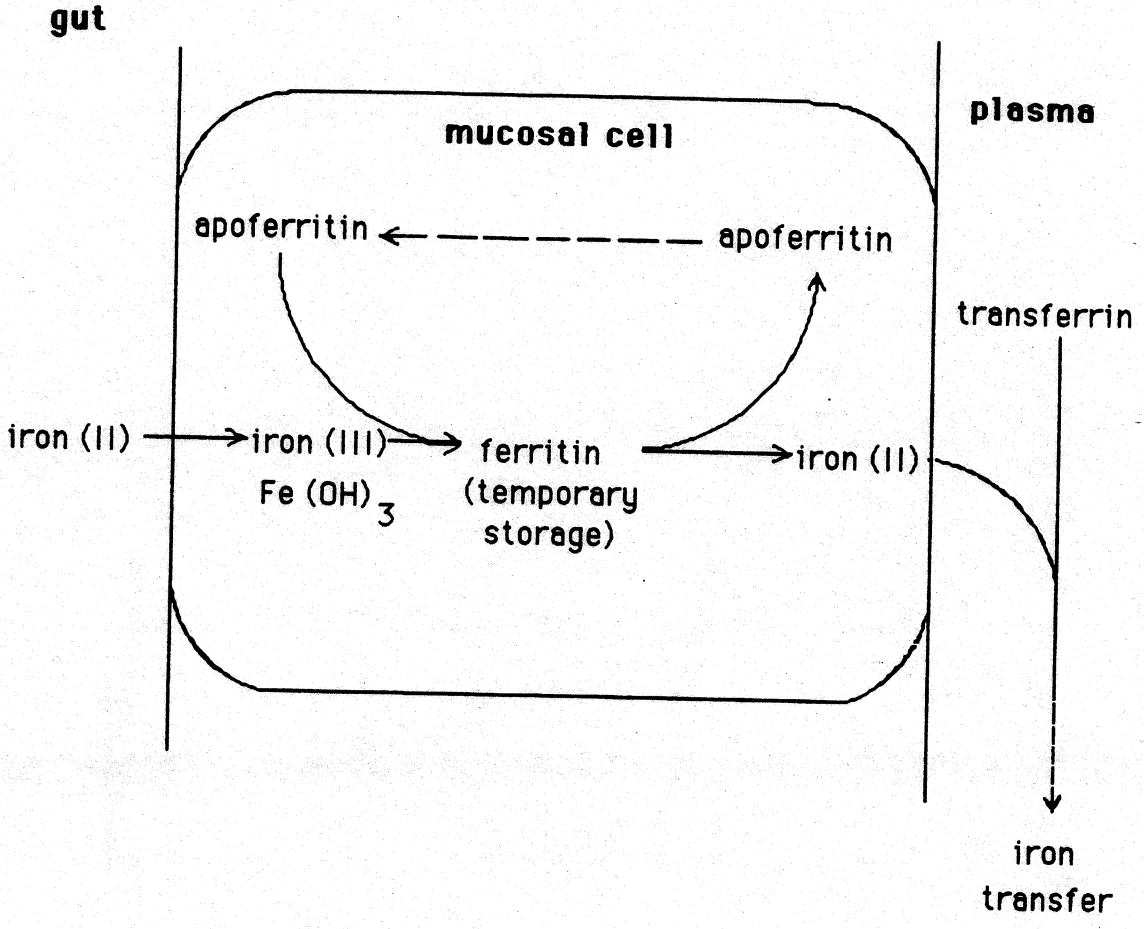


Fig. 19.1
Iron absorption by mucosal cell of the gut

The total iron content of an average man is about 80 mmol (4.5 g). Of this about 60% is in red cells (hemoglobin), 20% is in muscles (myoglobin) and tissue enzymes (cytochrome oxidase, peroxidase, catalase) and 20% is stored in the liver, spleen, and bone marrow (ferritin and hemosiderin).

In untreated, iron-deficiency anemia the serum iron is reduced, the normal being 1 to 3 mmol/liter (60 to 180 $\mu g/cm^3$). The level is raised in hemochromatosis and infective hepatitis. The iron in serum is bound to the protein transferrin. The amount of the latter determines the iron binding capacity of the serum which is normally 4.5 to 8 mmol/liter

(250 to 450 $\mu g/cm^3$.) The iron-binding capacity is increased in iron deficiency and is one of the more reliable indications that this condition is present. The amount of iron present, expressed as a proportion of the iron binding capacity, is the iron saturation. Normally, it is 15 to 40%. In iron deficiency it is usually less than 10%. In uncomplicated pernicious anemia and hemochromatosis, it is increased to nearly 100%.

HEMOGLOBIN

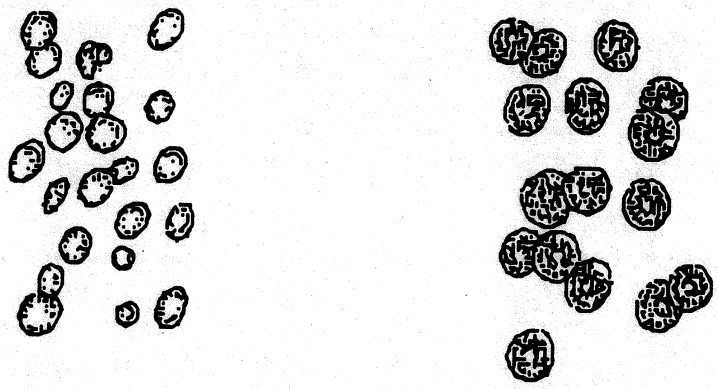
Hemoglobin has a complex molecular structure incorporating iron. It can bind molecular oxygen in a loose and easily reversible combination. The iron itself is not oxidized and remains in the iron(II) state throughout.

The symbol Hb represents unoxygenated (reduced) hemoglobin and HbO_2 represents oxyhemoglobin. The chemical structure of hemoglobin is described in Chapter 25.

In iron deficiency anemia there is insufficient iron available for the bone marrow to synthesize adequate hemoglobin. So the red cells are smaller than normal (microcytic) and incompletely filled with hemoglobin (hypochromic); see Fig. 19.2.

CARBOXYHEMOGLOBIN

Carbon monoxide has an even greater affinity for hemoglobin than oxygen, combining with it firmly. The carboxyhemoglobin which is formed blocks the hemoglobin molecule for oxygen carriage, thus depriving the tissues of oxygen. Relatively small amounts of carbon monoxide in the atmosphere, as from a car exhaust in a closed garage, can cause serious or fatal effects.



a b

FIG. 19.2
(a)Red cells in iron deficiency tend to be small with less hemoglobin than normal; (b) normal red cells.

COBALT

Cobalt (Ger. Kobold, goblin) is a hard, brittle metal resembling iron and nickel in appearance. It is used in making stainless steel and specially tough alloys, for example, for jet engines. One application is in the manufacture of surgical instruments, enabling them to be sterilized in a flame without damage. Like iron it has two valences. Its valence is two in cobaltous (cobalt(II) compounds, which includes all its simple compounds, and three in cobaltic (cobalt(III)) compounds which are more complex.

Salts of cobalt have been used for centuries to provide beautiful and permanent blue colors in glass, porcelain, pottery, tiles, and enamel. If a solution of cobalt(II) chloride, $CoCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O$ is used as ink, the very faint pink is invisible.

When the paper is warmed a clearly visible blue color develops because the water of crystallization is driven off, leaving a blue anhydrous salt. It soon rehydrates from the water vapor in the air and becomes invisible again.

Cobalt deficiency causes "pine" in sheep and cattle in whom vitamin B_{12} is normally formed by bacteria during rumination. All nonruminating animals, including man, require vitamin B_{12} in their diet instead of cobalt. We depend on animals and plants for our vitamin B_{12} and all eventually depend on soil bacteria to convert simple cobalt compounds into vitamin B_{12}.

VITAMIN B_{12}

Vitamin B_{12} (cyanocobalamine) is a very complex molecule with cobalt at its center (Fig. 19.3). Liver is a rich source. In 1926, Minot and Murphy showed that patients with pernicious anemia, who would have died, improved on large quantities of raw liver by mouth. Later, extracts from liver were prepared which could be injected. Crystalline vitamin B_{12} was finally isolated in 1948, independently in Britain and America, and was shown to be the effective agent in the treatment of pernicious anemia.

The essential cause of pernicious anemia is failure of the stomach to produce a substance (intrinsic factor) necessary for the absorption of vitamin B~ in the small intestine. After absorption, vitamin B_{12} is stored in the liver and utilized by the tissues, especially the bone marrow.

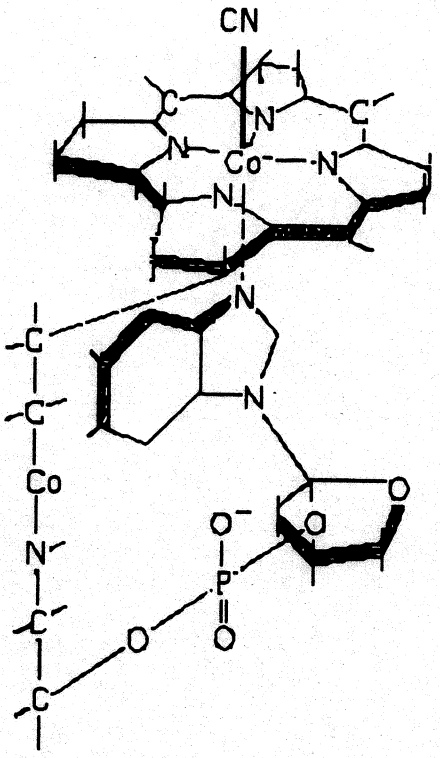


Figure 19.3
Skeleton of vitamin B_{12} (cyanocobalamine) molecule.

Vitamin B_{12} is an essential enzyme in the complicated nucleotide syntheses involved in the formation of new cells. In the bone marrow new cells must continually be produced to replace the time-expired cells, otherwise a progressive, pernicious anemia develops with a deficiency not only of red cells (Fig. 19.4) but also of white cells and platelets. In addition, vitamin B_{12} is required by the nervous system and without it, degenerative changes may occur (subacute combined degeneration of the cord) with progressive paralysis, loss of sensation, mental deterioration and even dementia.

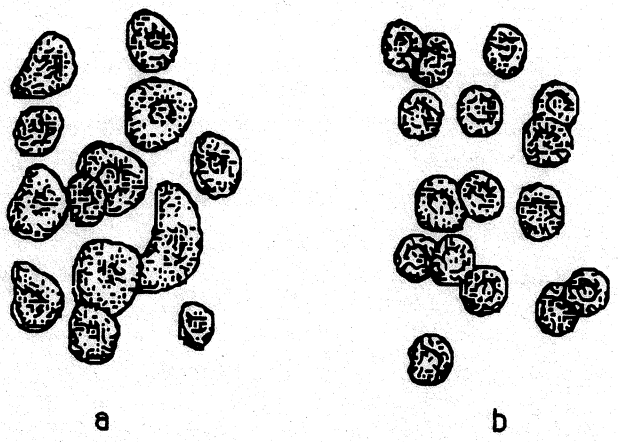


Fig. 19.4
(a) Red cells in pernicious anemia tend to be larger and more variable in size and shape than normal; (b) normal red cells.

COPPER

Metallic copper (L. cuprum, Cyprus, an island rich in copper) has a characteristic color to which it gives its name, with a bright metallic luster when polished. It is malleable, and ductile and a good conductor of heat and electricity. Its alloys include bronze, brass, gunmetal, and coin metals.

Copper has two valences. In cuprous (copper(l)) compounds, it has a valence of one, as in copper(l) chloride, CuCl, and in cupric(copper(II)) compounds, a valence of two, as in copper(II) chloride, $CuCl_2$. Copper(II) chloride may be made by passing excess chlorine over heated copper.

$$\underset{(s)}{Cu} + \underset{(g)}{Cl_2} = \underset{(s)}{CuCl_2}$$

Strong heating causes copper(II) chloride to break down into copper(l) chloride and chlorine.

$$\underset{(s)}{2CuCl_2} = \underset{(s)}{2CuCl} + \underset{(g)}{Cl_2}$$

Of the compounds of copper, the one most widely used is copper(II) sulfate, commonly called copper sulfate.

COPPER(II) SULFATE, $CuSO_4 \cdot 5H_2O$

Hydrated copper(II) sulfate is a blue crystalline substance, known as blue vitriol. It contains 5 moles of water of crystallization for each mole of salt ($CuSO_4 \cdot 5H_2O$). It is prepared commercially by spraying dilute sulfuric acid on scrap copper in a tower up which air is blown.

$$\underset{\substack{\text{COPPER}\\ \text{SCRAP}\\ \text{(DILUTE)}}}{2Cu_{(s)}} + \underset{\substack{\text{SULFURIC}\\ \text{ACID}}}{2H_2SO_{4(aq)}} + \underset{\substack{\text{OXYGEN}\\ \text{(FROM AIR)}}}{O_{2(g)}} = \underset{\substack{\text{COPPER(II)}\\ \text{SULFATE}}}{2CuSO_{4(aq)}} + 2H_2O_{(l)}$$

Copper(II) sulfate dissolves readily in water to give a blue solution. If this is evaporated the blue crystals of copper(II) sulfate pentahydrate ($CuSO_4 \cdot 5H_2O$) are obtained.

Copper(II) sulfate is strongly toxic to the lower organisms but much less so to the higher ones. So in very small quantities it may be added to swimming pools to destroy algae. It is used to prevent the "damping off" of seedlings caused by fungus infection, for spraying vines and for preventing potato blight. It is also an insecticide.

BIOLOGICAL ASPECTS OF COPPER

Copper in the diet assists the absorption of iron.

Thus rats on a copper deficient diet develop a microcytic anemia that responds to injected iron but is resistant to iron by mouth.

Infants on a copper-deficient diet also develop a microcytic anemia.

The normal level of copper in the serum is 12 to 25/μmol/liter (75 to 160/μg/100 Cm^3). This may be reduced in Wilson's disease, a metabolic defect involving copper in which the brain and liver are affected and large amounts of copper are excreted in the urine (over 20/μmol (1.3 mg)/24 hr).

Copper is present in some of the enzymes in the human body, for example tyrosinase.

There is a protein containing copper in our red cells (erythrocuprein)

but its function is unknown.

It is of interest that oxygen carriage in humans is by hemoglobin which contains four atoms of iron in its molecule, but in some creatures, such as squids, it is by a hemocyanin containing up to 20 atoms of copper in its molecule.

ZINC

Zinc (Ger. zink, unknown) is a bluish-white lustrous metal, brittle at ordinary temperatures but malleable at 100°C to 150°C. It is used in many alloys, for example, brass, German silver, and soft solder.

Zinc is resistant to atmospheric corrosion because it forms a protective film of carbonate on its surface, from the carbon dioxide and oxygen in the air. So iron and steel may be protected from corrosion by dipping the cleaned metal into molten zinc (galvanizing) so that a thin covering of zinc is obtained.

Unlike the rest of the transition metals, zinc has a fixed valence of two. This is determined solely by the two electrons in its N shell. The M shell is stable, being completely filled by 18 electrons.

Zinc sulphide is used for X ray and T.V. screens, fluorescent lights and luminous dials. Zinc oxide, however, is the compound with the widest applications.

ZINC OXIDE, ZnO

Zinc oxide is an insoluble white powder. It is probably most familiar in the form of zinc oxide ointment, used for skin application as a soothing cream. Its USP category is "astringent and topical protectant."

Zinc oxide is used in the manufacture of pharmaceuticals, cosmetics, paints, rubber products, floor coverings, plastics, printing ink, soap, textiles, and electrical equipment. It has unusual physical (optical, thermal, electrical, and solid state) properties which are not yet fully understood.

ZINC SULFATE

Zinc sulfate consists of odorless, colorless crystals that turn to fine powder on exposure to the air. They have 7 moles of water of crystallization to each mole of salt, $ZnSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$. It is sometimes used in medicine as an emetic. In capsular form it can be used for the administration of

istration of zinc in a case of zinc deficiency. Dosage needs to be carefully controlled because its toxic effect can be severe or fatal.

Red lotion (1otio rubra) contains 1% zinc sulfate and is used as an astringent surface antiseptic, for example, in the treatment of indolent ulcers to promote healing. The USP category of zinc sulfate is "astringent (ophthalmic]."

ZINC CARBONATE, $ZnCO_3$

Zinc carbonate is a white powder. It is one of the main constituents of calamine, which also contains zinc oxide, iron(III) oxide (giving it a pink color] and phenol (skin anesthetic and antiseptic). Calamine is used as a dusting powder and also as a soothing skin lotion suitable for sunburn.

ZINC IN THE BODY

The adult human body contains 2 to 4 g zinc, comparable to the amount of iron present which is 4 to 5 g. In contrast to iron which is mainly (75%) in the blood as hemoglobin, most of the zinc is in the tissue cells, those of the eye having the highest level (0.5%). Zinc is present in a number of enzymes, for example, carbonic anhydrase, but there is still much to be learned about its function and why, for example, there should be a low serum zinc in many cases of lung cancer.

CARBON CHEMISTRY

In the early nineteenth century chemists thought that substances by living cells had special properties by virtue of the "life force." Study of substances made by living organisms was called "organic" chemistry. A familiar example of an organic chemical is alcohol. Its preparation by the fermentation of grape-sugar has long been known to winemakers. More than a thousand years ago, it was discovered alcohol could be concentrated by distilling it to make spirits and liqueurs. In 1749, Marrgraf distilled red ants and obtained an acid which he called formic acid (L. formis, ant). When an ant stings it injects acid, causing pain to humans and capable of killing other insects.

Towards the end of the eighteenth century Scheele isolated lemons the citric acid which gives them their characteristic flavor. He also isolated malic acid from apples, tartaric acid from grapes, lactic acid from sour milk, and uric acid from urine. In 1773, Roualle isolated urea from human urine. A turning point came in 1846 when Wohler discovered that urea could be made in the laboratory by evaporating a watery solution of an inorganic substance, ammonium cyanate.

NH_4CNO	$CO(NH_2)_2$
AMMONIUM CYANATE	UREA

Wohler had made an organic chemical without the aid of the life force.

He had prepared urea "without requiring a kidney, or an animal, either man or dog," he wrote in a letter to a fellow chemist Berzelius.

At first Berzelius and the other chemists of his time could not believe it. Then in 1850, Kolbe provided further support for the idea by synthesizing acetic acid, the pungent acid of vinegar and sour wine. Gradually it became accepted that the same laws applied to both inorganic and organic chemistry.

ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

One thing that organic substances were found to have in common was that they all contained carbon.

So organic chemistry became defined as the chemistry of carbon compounds. Carbon compounds far outnumber the compounds of all the

other elements put together. These other compounds are known as inorganic compounds.

CARBON, C

Carbon (L. carbo, charcoal) is very widely distributed in the sun, stars, comets, planets and some meteorites. Our atmosphere contains 0.3% of carbon dioxide. This does not sound like very much but, in fact, it is the source from which all living organisms, directly or indirectly, obtain the carbon from which the molecules of living matter are constructed. Much of this carbon is returned to the atmosphere in the form of CO_2 as a product of respiration, both by animals and plants. But much of it has been locked up for geological ages in dead vegetable matter, from which coal is derived, and dead animal matter, from which petroleum (hydrocarbons) and chalk (carbonates) are derived.

Eventually some of this has been released once more into the atmosphere as CO_2 by man's utilization of coal, petroleum, and limestone. Volcanoes also eject much CO_2 into the atmosphere.

Carbon has an extraordinary capacity for making compounds. The principal raw materials from which carbon compounds are made are coal, oil, wood, and agricultural products. More than a million different carbon compounds have been described, outnumbering the noncarbon compounds of all the other elements put together by about twenty to one.

It is this capacity of carbon to combine with other atoms in such an enormous number of different ways which has made life possible. As well as forming numerous compounds, carbon is also found free in nature.

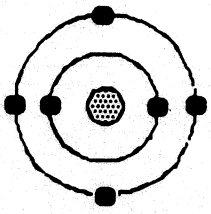
Carbon atoms can be arranged in two different ways and so there are two different physical forms, or allotropes, of the element: diamond, and graphite.

Diamond is one of the hardest known materials.

Graphite is extremely soft, being used in lubricants and "lead" pencils.

The different types of charcoal, such as animal and wood charcoal are composed of tiny graphite crystals.

The atomic structure of carbon may be represented as follows:



CARBON

Electron configuration	2, 4
Atomic number	6

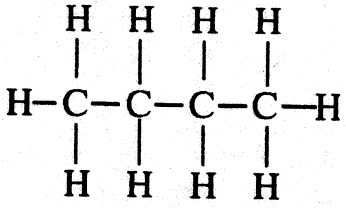
VARIETY OF CARBON COMPOUNDS

Why does carbon form so many compounds? Carbon has four electrons in its outer shell and so it must make four covalent bonds to acquire a stable octet of electrons. Because of this, and because the bonds made are strong ones, carbon atoms are able to unite with each other and with atoms of other elements (chiefly hydrogen, nitrogen, oxygen, the halogens, sulfur and phosphorus) to form open chains of varying length and closed chains, called rings, of a variety of shapes and sizes. The number of different ways the atoms can be arranged in these chains and rings is practically infinite. To illustrate the variety of atomic arrangements in carbon compounds, we will consider examples.

STRUCTURE OF CARBON COMPOUNDS

SHORT CHAINS

Short chains are one type of arrangement as camping gas) whose structure may be written as



or simply

$$CH_3\,CH_2\,CH_2\,CH_3$$

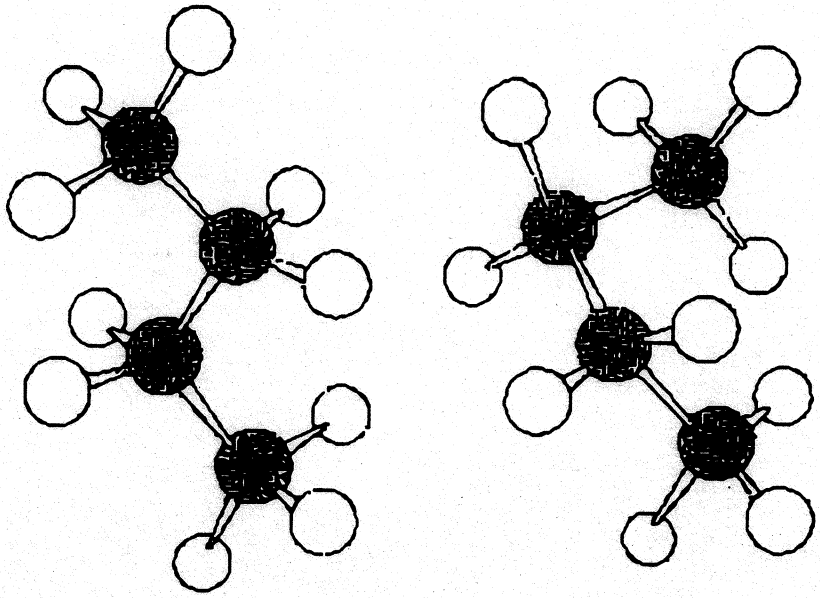
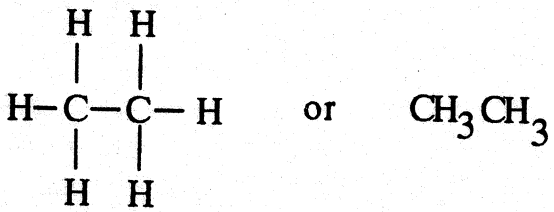


Figure 20.1
Conformations of butane. The carbon atoms are represented by the black spheres and the hydrogen by the white.

These structural formulas do not represent the shape of the molecule, which is in fact continually changing. Some of the possible shapes or conformations are illustrated by the models in Fig. 20.1. Notice that the carbon chain is not straight as implied by the formulas. We will return to this important point later when considering the shape of the methane molecule.

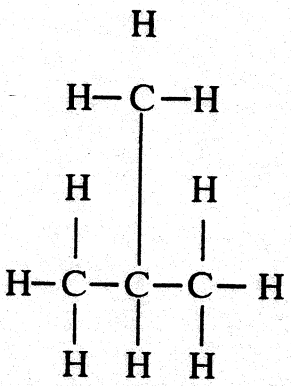
Butane is a member of a series of hydrocarbons (compounds containing carbon and hydrogen only) known as paraffins or alkanes which have the general formula C_nH_{2n+2}. Putting n = 1 gives the formula of methane CH_4, the simplest of all organic molecules and the chief constituent of natural gas.

The second member of this series (n= 2) is ethane C_2H_6 which has the structure

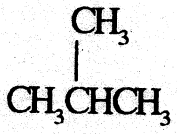


BRANCHED CHAINS

Branched chains are a slightly more complicated arrangement as in isobutane.



or simply



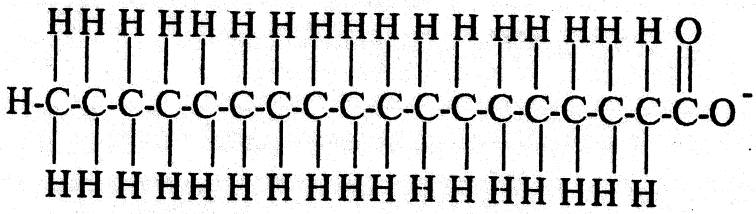
We notice that this alkane has the same molecular formula as butane, namely, C_4H_{10}.

The existence of compounds with the same molecular formula is known as isomerism and such compounds are called **isomers** (Gr. isos, equal + Gr. meros, part).

See if you can work out the structural formulas of isomers which have the molecular formula C_5H_{12}, bearing in mind that each carbon atom must have four bonds and each hydrogen atom one bond.

MEDIUM-LENGTH CHAINS

Medium-length chains have a slightly larger molecular structure, as in soap which contains the negative stearate ion.

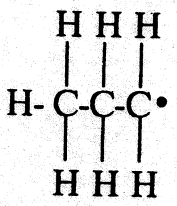


This ion can, of course, be written more simply, if less informatively, as $C_{17}H_{35}COO^-$. The grouping $C_{17}H_{35}$ is an example of an alkyl group or radical, which is a group of carbon and hydrogen atoms having the general formula C_NH_{2N+1}.

Alkyl groups are found combined with other atoms or groups in the majority of organic compounds.

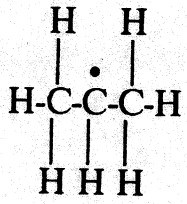
Putting n = 1 in C_NH_{2N+1}. gives the formula of the methyl radical CH_3. There are two radicals possible when n = 3.

One is called normal propyl (or n-propyl) and has the structure



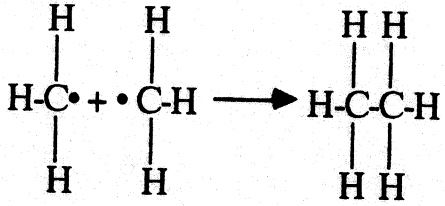
or $CH_3CH_2CH_2$

and its isomer is known as the iso-propyl radical with the structure

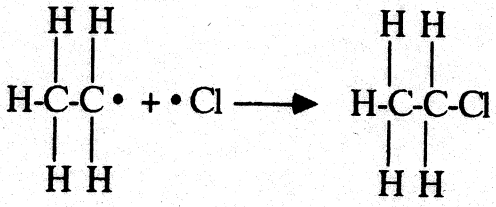


or $CH_3\dot{C}HCH_2$

In these formulas, the dot on a carbon represents an unpaired electron, so that such a carbon atom has only seven electrons in its outer shell and is consequently very reactive. It combines readily with another atom or radical in order to acquire a stable octet. For example, two methyl radicals combine to form ethane.



and an ethyl radical combines with a chlorine atom [which we recall has seven electrons in its outer shell) to form ethyl chloride or chloro-ethane, which is sometimes used as an external local anesthetic, producing its effect by greatly cooling the skin surface as it evaporates.

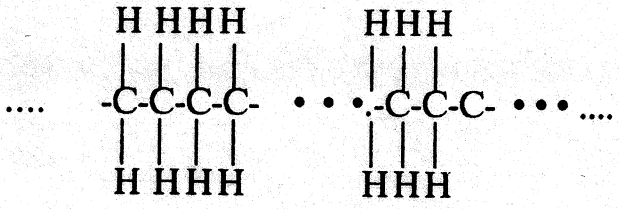


CHLOROETHANE
(ETHYL CHLORIDE)

Radicals, therefore, if they happen to be produced in a chemical reaction, have only a momentary independent existence.

LONG CHAINS

Long chains are an arrangement that contains thousands of atoms, as in polyethylene (polythene), which has the following structure:

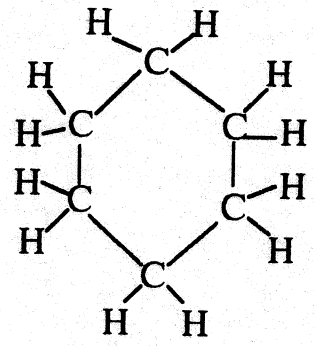


POLYETHYLENE
(POLYTHENE)

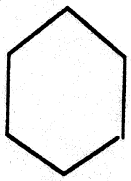
This long chain formula is characteristic of plastics.

RINGS

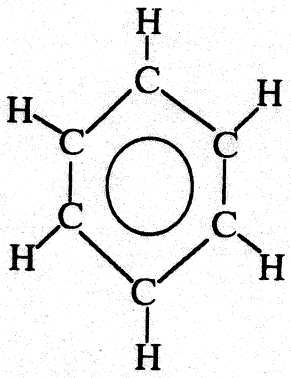
Rings show a cyclic arrangement of carbon atoms as in cyclohexane and benzene.



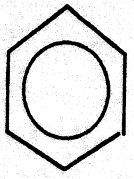
often abbreviated to



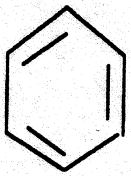
CYCLOHEXANE



normally abbreviated to



or



BENZENE

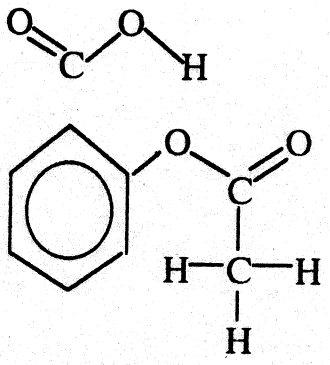
The circle drawn inside the **benzene ring** of carbon atoms needs explanation.

An uncombined carbon atom has four electrons in its outer shell. In the benzene molecule, three of these electrons are used forming three co-valent bonds, as indicated in the formula.

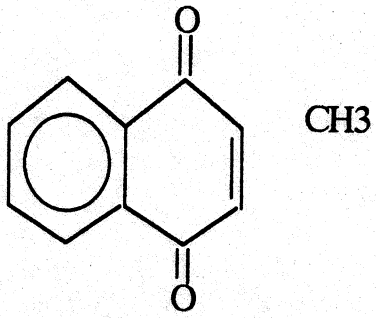
There is much evidence to suggest that the fourth electron on each carbon "wanders" around the ring of six carbon atoms, so that, in all, there are six electrons circulating in the ring.

The circle in the structural formula indicates this. These six electrons are said to be **delocalized** because none of them is **localized** on a particular carbon atom.

Compounds with a similar chemistry to benzene are called **aromatic** and they form a large and very important class of organic compounds. Not surprisingly, the molecules of most of these aromatic compounds contain at least one benzene ring, for example, aspirin and menadione.



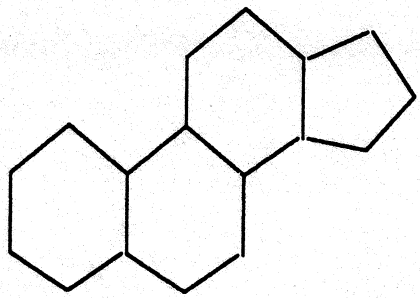
ASPIRIN
(RELIEVES PAIN)



MENADIONE
(PROMOTES BLOOD CLOTTING)

FUSED RINGS

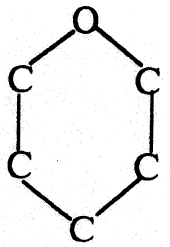
Fused rings are rings that share a pair of atoms as in cholesterol, the sex hormones, and oral contraceptives which are known collectively as steroids. Their molecules all contain the following "carbon-skeleton," to which various groups of atoms are attached:



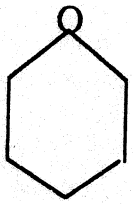
Remember that carbon atoms are at the corners of the rings.

RINGS WITH CARBON AND OTHER ATOMS

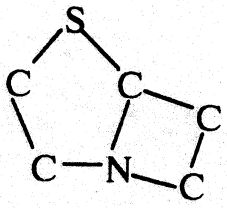
Rings that contain other atoms as well as carbon are of considerable biological importance. Examples are glucose and penicillin with the following molecular skeletons:



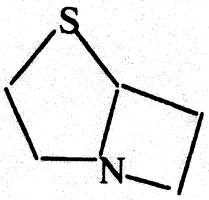
which may be abbreviated to



GLUCOSE SKELETON



which may be abbreviated to



Compounds whose molecules have rings containing other atoms as well as carbon are called heterocyclic compounds. If the rings contain carbon atoms only, the compounds are said to be homocyclic.

INDEX
FOR
MEDICAL CHEMISTRY 1

A

absorption in the lower small intestine., *(MC-1)* 140
absorption of iron from organic sources tends to be poor but there are exceptions such as beef. , *(MC-1)* 155
absorption of iron, *(MC-1)* 162
acceptor atom., *(MC-1)* 19
acetate, 91
acetic acid is a weak proton donor, that is, a weak acid. , *(MC-1)* 86
acid depends entirely on the nature of the solvent., *(MC-1)* 87
acid may be shown by adding blue litmus, which turns red, *(MC-1)* 66
acid salt" is only a classification; such a salt does not necessarily give an acidic solution., *(MC-1)* 91
acid salts, *(MC-1)* 91
acid solution the calcium phosphate formed is soluble whereas in an, *(MC-1)* 140
acid then reacts with substances in the soil, for example, carbonates to produce nitrates, *(MC-1)* 146
acid urine if there is a tendency to acidosis and a more alkaline urine if there is a tendency to alkalosis., *(MC-1)* 89
acid-base balance of our blood constant., *(MC-1)* 90-91
acidity of a solution depends on the concentration of hydrogen ions, *(MC-1)* 71
acidosis as for diabetic coma. Its USP category is "antacid.", *(MC-1)* 114
acidosis for example in respiratory failure when the lungs fail to expel carbon dioxide, CO2 rapidly enough to prevent the carbonic acid, H2CO3 level in the blood from rising, *(MC-1)* 89
Acids are a very important group of substances containing hydrogen, *(MC-1)* 71
acids behave in this way only if they are dissolved in a suitable solvent, usually water, *(MC-1)* 86
acids can form normal salts, but only those with two or more replaceable hydrogen atoms per molecule can form acid salts. , *(MC-1)* 91
acids derived from chlorine are hydrochloric acid and four oxy-acids:, *(MC-1)* 121
acids have a sour taste and tend to burn the skin, *(MC-1)* 85
acids their bite., *(MC-1)* 71
acids, such as the sulfuric acid in car batteries or the hydrochloric acid from our stomachs, *(MC-1)* 85
Addison's disease (failure of the adrenal cortex to produce enough steroids)., *(MC-1)* 93
Addison's disease, the steroid secretion becomes insufficient to promote the necessary reabsorption of sodium by the kidney tubules., *(MC-1)* 116
adenosine phosphates which provide the energy transfer currency in cellular respiration., *(MC-1)* 149
adenosine triphosphate). In this form, it is readily available to be converted into energy, such as the physical energy of muscular contraction., *(MC-1)* 75
adrenal cortex tissue is damaged, as in Addison's disease, the steroid secretion becomes insufficient to promote the necessary reabsorption of sodium by the kidney tubules., *(MC-1)* 116
adrenal cortex to produce enough steroids)., *(MC-1)* 93
adrenal cortex, especially aldosterone., *(MC-1)* 115
Adrenal steroids are secreted in excess, causing the kidneys to reabsorb too much sodium., *(MC-1)* 116

adult rickets), *(MC-1)* 140
air shows it to be a mixture of a number of gases with the following volume composition:, *(MC-1)* 47
albumin which produces the greatest osmotic effect., *(MC-1)* 97
albumin, *(MC-1)* 97
alchemists of the middle ages were mainly occupied in attempting to transmute base materials into gold, *(MC-1)* 1
alchemy to modern chemistry., *(MC-1)* 1
alcohol, *(MC-1)* 1
aldosterone., *(MC-1)* 115
Alexandria where it was known as the divine art., *(MC-1)* 1
Alexandria where it was known as the divine art., *(MC-1)* 1
algae, *(MC-1)* 162
alkali metals have a similar atomic structure in having only one electron in the outer shell, which gives each element a valency of one, *(MC-1)* 106
alkali metals. , *(MC-1)* 133
alkali metals., *(MC-1)* 106
alkaline earth metals have a similar atomic structure in that each has two electrons in the outer valency shell., *(MC-1)* 131
alkaline solution the phosphate and carbonate produced are insoluble, which results in less absorption in the lower small intestine., *(MC-1)* 140
alkaline urine if there is a tendency to alkalosis., *(MC-1)* 89
alkalis form an important class of bases, *(MC-1)* 88
Alkalis turn red litmus blue and neutralize acids; that is, convert hydroxonium ions into water, *(MC-1)* 88
alkalosis, *(MC-1)* 89
alkalosis, for example, from severe vomiting, when there is loss of large quantities of hydrochloric acid, HCl from the stomach, or from excessive alkali therapy which can happen in the treatment of peptic ulcer, *(MC-1)* 89
alkalosis., *(MC-1)* 89
alkanes which have the general formula CnH2n+2., *(MC-1)* 168
allotropes, of the element: diamond, and graphite. , *(MC-1)* 166
alveolar walls, *(MC-1)* 42
alveoli (Fig. 8.4, 41
alveoli have very thin walls through which dissolved oxygen can readily pass to enter the blood flowing through the numerous capillaries in the alveolar walls, *(MC-1)* 42
ammonia from nitrogen and hydrogen, or in simple inorganic compounds, for example manganese dioxide, MnO2 facilitating the release of oxygen from heated potassium chlorate, or else in complex organic molecules such as cytochrome oxidase, an enzyme containing iron which facilitates the utilization of oxygen in tissue respiration., *(MC-1)* 151-152
Ammonia is also used by the electronics industry as a blanketing medium for preparing transistors., *(MC-1)* 145
ammonia produced, as in the, *(MC-1)* 74
Ammonia, NH3 and phosphine, PH3 illustrate this tervalency of nitrogen and phosphorus. , *(MC-1)* 142
anaesthetist uses carbon dioxide in the operating theater when he wants to stimulate the patient's respiration, *(MC-1)* 46
anesthetic halothane (fluothane, I.C.I.), *(MC-1)* 121
anesthetic, producing its effect by greatly cooling the skin surface as it evaporates., *(MC-1)* 171
animals contain sodium and potassium ions., *(MC-1)* 108
anode is, *(MC-1)* 58
anode, *(MC-1)* 56
antacid much used in the treatment of gastric ulcers is magnesium trisilicate, 2MgO-3SiO2 (with

water of crystallization)., *(MC-1)* 134
antacid.", *(MC-1)* 114
antacid; cathartic., *(MC-1)* 134
antiseptic, *(MC-1)* 120
antiseptic., *(MC-1)* 123-124
antiseptics destroy bacteria by oxidation, *(MC-1)* 66
Anuria (failure of the kidney to produce urine) occurs following shock and its associated fall in blood pressure, *(MC-1)* 104
apoferritin, to form an iron-protein complex, ferritin. In this form it is temporarily stored in the mucosal cells until needed (Fig. 19.1)., *(MC-1)* 156
aqueous, dissolved in water, (aq), *(MC-1)* 32
Arabs invaded Egypt they adopted its divine art as 'al chemia' or alchemy., *(MC-1)* 1
aromatic compounds contain at least one benzene ring, *(MC-1)* 172
aromatic, *(MC-1)* 172
arsenic, As with shell structure 2, 8, 18, 5, 13
arterial end of our capillaries the pressure is still sufficient not only to prevent osmotic flow into the capillary but actually to cause fluid to pass out through the capillary wall into the tissue spaces, *(MC-1)* 97
arteries is under considerable pressure, *(MC-1)* 97
artificial kidney provides a means of tiding the patient over the crisis until kidney function recovers, *(MC-1)* 104
artificial kidney the patient's blood is passed through long coils of collodion tubing surrounded by a saline solution, *(MC-1)* 104-105
ARTIFICIAL KIDNEY, *(MC-1)* 104
asbestos and other minerals, *(MC-1)* 134
Astatine is a rare radioactive element made by man, that is so unstable that little is known of its chemistry, *(MC-1)* 118
astatine; the rest are metals, *(MC-1)* 13
atmospheric corrosion, *(MC-1)* 163
atom as a whole is electrically neutral, *(MC-1)* 10
atom consists of a relatively tiny and heavy, positively charged nucleus around which negatively charged electrons orbit., *(MC-1)* 1
atom has a tiny central nucleus which contains the protons and neutrons, *(MC-1)* 10
atom is thinly populated by electrons which revolve around the nucleus, *(MC-1)* 10
atom losing electron(s) to another atom, *(MC-1)* 16
atomic absorption spectroscopy, is now used in hospital laboratories for measuring the amount of magnesium and calcium in blood plasma., *(MC-1)* 134
atomic number of oxygen is 8 and its electron configuration is 2, 6. , *(MC-1)* 60
atomic number that establishes the uniqueness of an element, *(MC-1)* 11
atomic structure of carbon, *(MC-1)* 166
atomic structure. They are the proton, the neutron and the electron, *(MC-1)* 10
atomic theory which states that atoms are neither created nor destroyed in normal chemical changes, *(MC-1)* 30
atomic weight in grams., *(MC-1)* 26
ATOMIC WEIGHT OF AN ELEMENT, *(MC-1)* 24
atomic weights as indicated by the formula, *(MC-1)* 25
atomic weights of the elements in the substance., *(MC-1)* 25
atoms are themselves built up of tiny particles of over thirty different kinds, *(MC-1)* 4
ATOMS BONDED TOGETHER, *(MC-1)* 21
atoms in many substances join together to form groups which we call molecules, *(MC-1)* 4
atoms in molecules are always joined together by covalent bonds., *(MC-1)* 22
Atoms of all metals need to lose electrons to acquire a stable number of electrons in their outermost shells., *(MC-1)* 19

atoms sharing a pair of electrons, *(MC-1)* 18
atoms which carry an electrical charge are called, *(MC-1)* 6
ATP (adenosine triphosphate). In this form, it is readily available to be converted into energy, such as the physical energy of muscular contraction., *(MC-1)* 75
ATP, adenosine tri-phosphate. Without a continual supply of ATP the cells would stop functioning and we would die, *(MC-1)* 43
atrio-ventricular conducting system (see Fig. 9.5) this normal progression is disturbed., *(MC-1)* 52
atrium called the, *(MC-1)* 58
attraction of a positive charge and a negative one, *(MC-1)* 9
Avogadro's law, which states that equal volumes of gases contain the same number of molecules, *(MC-1)* 63
azote" (without life)., *(MC-1)* 144

bacteria by oxidation, *(MC-1)* 66
bacteria in the soil first into nitrites and then into nitrates. , *(MC-1)* 145
BACTERIA, *(MC-1)* 66
balance already achieved for the atoms of another element. , *(MC-1)* 31
balancing the atoms of one element, we upset the balance already achieved for the atoms of another element. , *(MC-1)* 31
Barium (Ba), *(MC-1)* 131
base is also used for compounds that contain hydroxyl or oxide ions, for example, copper(II) hydroxide, and magnesium oxide, MgO., *(MC-1)* 88
base materials into gold, *(MC-1)* 1
Base metals such as sodium and potassium combine readily with oxygen, *(MC-1)* 65
bases, *(MC-1)* 88
battery pumps electrons on to the cathode, making it negative so that it attracts the sodium ions Na+. When they reach the cathode they are reduced by the electrons to sodium atoms; thus, metallic sodium is formed., *(MC-1)* 54
Beaumont, in 1819. He studied a patient, Alexis St. Martin, a French Canadian hunter, with a stomach opening on to the abdominal wall caused accidently by a musket wound., *(MC-1)* 122
beef. , *(MC-1)* 155
benzene ring of carbon atoms needs explanation. , *(MC-1)* 172
benzene ring., *(MC-1)* 127
Beryllium (Be), *(MC-1)* 131
biological activity of T4., *(MC-1)* 129
bisulfates, *(MC-1)* 90
bleaching agent and antiseptic., *(MC-1)* 123-124
bleaching powder, *(MC-1)* 123
BLOOD ELECTROLYTES, *(MC-1)* 93
blood from the veins to the arteries fast enough, *(MC-1)* 97
blood in our arteries is under considerable pressure, *(MC-1)* 97
BLOOD pH, *(MC-1)* 89
blood reaches the venous end of the capillary its pressure has dropped so much that the osmotic effect of the plasma proteins inside the capillary is no longer counteracted and fluid returns into the vessel again, the capillary wall acting as a semipermeable membrane, *(MC-1)* 97
blood transfusion, *(MC-1)* 104
blue colors in glass, porcelain, pottery, tiles, and enamel. If a solution of cobalt(II) chloride, $CoCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O$ is used as ink, the very faint pink is invisible. , *(MC-1)* 159
Blue Grotto, *(MC-1)* 81
blue liquid,, *(MC-1)* 73
blue litmus, which turns red, *(MC-1)* 66
body fluids of all animals contain sodium and potassium ions., *(MC-1)* 108
body responds to the low serum chloride by reducing or ceasing chloride excretion in the urine., *(MC-1)* 123
boiling point of water at 100°C and its freezing point at O°C, at 1 atmosphere pressure, *(MC-1)* 81
Bonding in giant structures can be either covalent, as in diamond (Fig. 5.2] or ionic, as in sodium chloride (Fig. 5.3)., *(MC-1)* 22
bonding on properties is really what chemistry is all about., *(MC-1)* 16
bonds between atoms in a chemical change?, *(MC-1)* 22
BONDS BETWEEN ATOMS, *(MC-1)* 16
BONDS DURING CHEMICAL CHANGES, *(MC-1)* 22
bonds which hold its atoms together and the study of the effect of bonding on properties is really what chemistry is all about., *(MC-1)* 16
bonds, *(MC-1)* 16
Bone ash, which is mainly calcium phosphate, $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ is used in the production of bone china., *(MC-1)* 147

bones and gives them rigidity. The remaining 1% has a number of very important functions, *(MC-1)* 139
bones consist of fibrous connective tissue (collagen) which is impregnated with calcium salts, mainly calcium phosphate. , *(MC-1)* 140
boron to astatine; the rest are metals, *(MC-1)* 13
Boyle developed the concept of chemical elements, *(MC-1)* 2
brain., *(MC-1)* 53
Branched chains, *(MC-1)* 169
Brand in 1669 who prepared it from urine, *(MC-1)* 147
brass (copper, zinc), *(MC-1)* 151
breathe, oxygen from the air reacts with substances in our bodies to produce oxides and energy. The end products are the same as those produced when these substances burn in air, *(MC-1)* 40
breathe?, *(MC-1)* 40
bromides. , *(MC-1)* 125
bromine (a very dark red liquid) is placed under some water in a bottle we notice that after a day or two the bromine has spread evenly throughout the water giving it a uniform red color, *(MC-1)* 3
Bromine (Gr. bromos, stench) is the only nonmetallic element that exists in liquid form at ordinary temperatures, *(MC-1)* 125
Bromine readily unites with many elements to form bromides. , *(MC-1)* 125
bronze (copper, tin), *(MC-1)* 151
bruises. , *(MC-1)* 111
buffering system is provided by the kidneys which, provided they are healthy, secrete a more acid urine if there is a tendency to acidosis and a more alkaline urine if there is a tendency to alkalosis., *(MC-1)* 89
Bunsen burner, *(MC-1)* 62
burn in air, *(MC-1)* 40
burn the skin, *(MC-1)* 85
burner, *(MC-1)* 62
burning substance with oxygen, *(MC-1)* 64
burnt air, *(MC-1)* 144
burst. , *(MC-1)* 95
Butane is a member of a series of hydrocarbons (compounds containing carbon and hydrogen only) known as paraffins or alkanes which have the general formula CnH2n+2., *(MC-1)* 168

Ca with shell structure 2, 8, 8, 2, *(MC-1)* 13
Calamine is used as a dusting powder and also as a soothing skin lotion suitable for sunburn., *(MC-1)* 164
calcitonin (or thyrocalcitonin) that is secreted by the thyroid gland. The effect of this is the opposite of parathormone in that it promotes the deposition of calcium in the bones from the blood. *(MC-1)* , 140
calcium hypochlorite, Ca(ClO)2., *(MC-1)* 138
Calcium (Ca), *(MC-1)* 131
Calcium (L. calx, lime) is a rather hard, silvery metal. Its compounds give rigidity to bone, teeth and shells, *(MC-1)* 136
calcium and hydrogen resulting in the formation of the ionic compound, *(MC-1)* 17
calcium and the phosphate ions in solution in the blood are converted into the hard structure of bone involves the bone cells, called osteoblasts, and an enzyme called phosphatase, but the details are not yet fully understood, *(MC-1)* 140-141
calcium atom must lose two electrons in order to acquire a stable octet in its outer shell and a hydrogen atom must gain one electron to obtain the stable doublet of helium, *(MC-1)* 17
calcium carbonate is converted into soluble calcium bicarbonate., *(MC-1)* 138
calcium carbonate so that bread can be an important dietetic source, *(MC-1)* 139
Calcium carbonate, CaCO3 is the essential constituent of limestone and chalk., *(MC-1)* 138
calcium carbonate, CaCO3), *(MC-1)* 136
CALCIUM CHLORIDE, *(MC-1)* 136
Calcium chloride, CaCl2 is a soluble calcium salt. It is used in the treatment of children suffering from calcium deficiency, given by mouth., *(MC-1)* 138-139
Calcium differs from magnesium in having an extra electron shell with its octet of electrons intervening between the nucleus and the two outer valence electrons., *(MC-1)* 133
calcium from the small intestine. , *(MC-1)* 140
calcium gluconate which does not produce such a high concentration of calcium ions. Its USP category is "calcium replenisher.", *(MC-1)* 139
CALCIUM HYDRIDE, *(MC-1)* 136
calcium hydride., *(MC-1)* 17
calcium hydroxide dissolved in water, *(MC-1)* 138
calcium hypochlorite, Ca(ClO)2 and as antiseptics such as sodium hypochlorite, NaClO., *(MC-1)* 123
calcium in our blood is present in this ionic form. If there is insufficient ionized calcium in our blood, our muscles go into involuntary spasm (tetany). Insufficient magnesium in the blood also produces tetany., *(MC-1)* 33
calcium in our body is in our bones and gives them rigidity. The remaining 1% has a number of very important functions, *(MC-1)* 139
calcium ions is critical in preventing excessive excitability of the nerves and muscle; it also plays a vital role in blood clotting. , *(MC-1)* 139
Calcium is the fifth most abundant element in the earth's crust., *(MC-1)* 136
Calcium metal burns with a yellow-red flame in air mainly to form calcium nitride with some oxide *(MC-1)* , 136
calcium nitride with some oxide *(MC-1)* , 136
calcium phosphate formed is soluble whereas in an, *(MC-1)* 140
calcium phosphate, *(MC-1)* 139
calcium releases these two electrons more readily than magnesium to form the simple cation Ca2+. , *(MC-1)* 133
calcium replenisher.", *(MC-1)* 139
calcium rigor, *(MC-1)* 139
calcium salts in bone are arranged in a crystalline lattice which presents a very large surface area to the interstitial fluid., *(MC-1)* 141
CALCIUM SULFIDE, *(MC-1)* 136

calcium takes part in a number of enzyme systems, including those responsible for conducting nerve impulses and for causing muscular contraction., *(MC-1)* 139
calcium, *(MC-1)* 17
calcium, Ca with shell structure 2, 8, 8, 2, *(MC-1)* 13
Calcium, therefore, has a valence of 2 and is said to be divalent, *(MC-1)* 17
CALCULATION OF FORMULA WEIGHTS, *(MC-1)* 25
candle grease, and petrol. They must be distinguished from carbohydrates, *(MC-1)* 71
capillaries in the alveolar walls, *(MC-1)* 42
capillary from the tissue spaces, *(MC-1)* 97
capillary pressure, *(MC-1)* 98
Capri Island., *(MC-1)* 81
Carbon (L. carbo, charcoal) is very widely distributed in the sun, stars, comets, planets and some meteorites, *(MC-1)* 166
Carbon atoms can be arranged in two different ways and so there are two different physical forms, or allotropes, of the element: diamond, and graphite. , *(MC-1)* 166
carbon burns it combines with the oxygen in the air to form carbon dioxide, *(MC-1)* 64
CARBON CHEMISTRY, *(MC-1)* 165
Carbon compounds far outnumber the compounds of all the other elements put together, *(MC-1)* 165-166
carbon dioxide = 44., *(MC-1)* 25
carbon dioxide and water vapor produced when we breathe?, *(MC-1)* 40
carbon dioxide dissolved in rain water makes it a very weak acid, *(MC-1)* 77
CARBON DIOXIDE FROM THE HUMAN BODY, *(MC-1)* 45
carbon dioxide in the air to soluble carbonates, *(MC-1)* 108
carbon dioxide in the operating theater when he wants to stimulate the patient's respiration, *(MC-1)* 46
Carbon dioxide is a gas, although no gas is actually produced because it dissolves in water to form carbonic acid, *(MC-1)* 45
carbon dioxide is dissolved in water., *(MC-1)* 90
carbon dioxide, *(MC-1)* 25, *(MC-1)* 64
Carbon dioxide, carbonic acid and its salts play an important part in keeping the acid-base balance of our blood constant., *(MC-1)* 90-91
carbon form so many compounds?, *(MC-1)* 167
Carbon has an extraordinary capacity for making compounds, *(MC-1)* 166
carbon is returned to the atmosphere in the form of CO2 as a product of respiration, both by animals and plants, *(MC-1)* 166
carbon monoxide and hydrogen which is formed is known as, *(MC-1)* 73
Carbon monoxide has an even greater affinity for hemoglobin than oxygen, combining with it firmly., *(MC-1)* 158
Carbon tetrachloride has a molecule like that of methane with all four of the hydrogen atoms replaced by chlorine., *(MC-1)* 125
Carbon tetrachloride is a very effective solvent for grease and oil., *(MC-1)* 125
carbon, *(MC-1)* 166
carbonates to produce nitrates, *(MC-1)* 146
carbonic acid and its salts play an important part in keeping the acid-base balance of our blood constant., *(MC-1)* 90-91
Carbonic acid has also two replaceable hydrogen atoms per molecule, *(MC-1)* 90
carbonic acid is partly neutralized by the sodium carbonate in the blood stream., *(MC-1)* 45
carbonic acid, H2CO3 level in the blood from rising, *(MC-1)* 89
carbonic acid, the weak acid formed when carbon dioxide is dissolved in water., *(MC-1)* 90
carbonic acid., *MC-1)* 6, *(MC-1)* 46
carboxyhemoglobin which is formed blocks the hemoglobin molecule for oxygen carriage, thus depriving the tissues of oxygen, *(MC-1)* 158

CARBOXYHEMOGLOBIN, *(MC-1)* 158
cardiac failure., *(MC-1)* 123
catalyst: It speeds up the reaction but is not itself used up in the process., *(MC-1)* 62
catalysts, either in elemental form, for example iron accelerating the formation of ammonia from nitrogen and hydrogen, or in simple inorganic compounds, for example manganese dioxide, MnO2 facilitating the release of oxygen from heated potassium chlorate, or else in complex organic molecules such as cytochrome oxidase, an enzyme containing iron which facilitates the utilization of oxygen in tissue respiration., *(MC-1)* 151-152
cathode they are reduced by the electrons to sodium atoms; thus, metallic sodium is formed., *(MC-1)* 54
cathode), *(MC-1)* 63
caustic potash, KOH. , *(MC-1)* 108
caustic soda, NaOH., *(MC-1)* 108
cell respiration is continually producing more carbon dioxide there is a relatively high concentration of carbonic acid., *(MC-1)* 6
cellular respiration., *(MC-1)* 149
cement., *(MC-1)* 19
Chalk, derived from bygone shellfish, is also calcium carbonate., *(MC-1)* 136
chaos" to represent the wild motion of its particles, *(MC-1)* 1
charcoal, such as animal and wood charcoal are composed of tiny graphite crystals., *(MC-1)* 166
charge on the handkerchief canceled out the charge on the polyethylene strips, *(MC-1)* 9
charge on the rubbed polyethylene is negative, and that on the rubbed handkerchief is positive., *(MC-1)* 9
cheese contains 20 mmol (0.8 g) calcium/100 g., *(MC-1)* 139
chemical bonds, *(MC-1)* 16
chemical change?, *(MC-1)* 22
chemical energy of fuels is therefore derived from the sun, *(MC-1)* 50
chemical equation is a shorthand way of representing a reaction using the formulas of the substances concerned, *(MC-1)* 30
CHEMICAL EQUATIONS, *(MC-1)* 30
chemical phenomena, *(MC-1)* 4
chemical reactions in the human body depend on catalysts made of protein, called enzymes., *(MC-1)* 62
Chemistry evolved out of man's need to make weapons, woman's desire for ornaments and their joint need of vessels, utensils, and embalming fluids., *(MC-1)* 1
chemistry had become a recognized branch of learning in the city of Alexandria where it was known as the divine art., *(MC-1)* 1
Chemistry is the study of substances, their properties and structures, and of the reactions by which they can be changed into other substances., *(MC-1)* 3
child is weaned., *(MC-1)* 156
chloride (hyperch1oremia) can also occur namely when excretion is impaired, as in a urinary tract obstruction, severe kidney disease and cardiac failure., *(MC-1)* 123
chloride depletion is to administer chloride, usually in the form of sodium chloride solution, either by mouth or by intravenous saline (sodium chloride) infusion., *(MC-1)* 123
chloride excretion in the urine., *(MC-1)* 123
CHLORIDE IN THE HUMAN BODY, *(MC-1)* 122
chloride ion, Cl- is the most abundant anion in our extracellular fluid, the normal blood level being 96 to 106 mmol/liter. , *(MC-1)* 122
chlorides NaCl, *(MC-1)* 122
chlorination, *(MC-1)* 79
Chlorine (Gr. Chloros, greenish yellow) is a greenish yellow gas, *(MC-1)* 121
chlorine ion (Cl-), attracts the slightly positive hydrogen atoms, *(MC-1)* 83
chlorine ions form an essential ingredient of our body fluids in which they are the most abundant

anions., *(MC-1)* 118
Chlorine is the commonest member of the group of elements called the halogens., *(MC-1)* 118
Chlorine it is too reactive to be used as an antiseptic, *(MC-1)* 120
Chlorine was used as a poison gas In the I914-1918 war causing great disability and loss of life, *(MC-1)* 118
chlorine. , *(MC-1)* 79
chlorites NaClO3, *(MC-1)* 122
chloroethane, which is sometimes used as an external local anesthetic, producing its effect by greatly cooling the skin surface as it evaporates., *(MC-1)* 171
chloroform CHC13 as an anesthetic., *(MC-1)* 121
Chloroform exposed to air and sunlight undergoes gradual oxidation to poisonous phosgene., *(MC-1)* 124
Chloroform has a molecule like that of methane, CH4 with three of the four hydrogen atoms replaced by chlorine., *(MC-1)* 124
Chloroform is a liquid with a low boiling point 61°C and a sweetish smell., *(MC-1)* 124
Chloroform is now mainly used as a preservative in liquid medicines. , *(MC-1)* 124
chlorous acid HClO2, *(MC-1)* 122
chocolate, prunes, and some vegetables, such as spinach. , *(MC-1)* 155
cholera type., *(MC-1)* 80
cholera, *(MC-1)* 85
circle drawn inside the benzene ring of carbon atoms needs explanation. , *(MC-1)* 172
circle in the structural formula indicates this, *(MC-1)* 172
Cobalt (Ger. Kobold, goblin) is a hard, brittle metal resembling iron and nickel in appearance., *(MC-1)* 159
Cobalt deficiency causes "pine" in sheep and cattle in whom vitamin B12 is normally formed by bacteria during rumination, *(MC-1)* 159
cobalt have been used for centuries to provide beautiful and permanent blue colors in glass, porcelain, pottery, tiles, and enamel. If a solution of cobalt(II) chloride, CoCl2•6H2O is used as ink, the very faint pink is invisible. , *(MC-1)* 159
cobalt(II) chloride, CoCl2•6H2O is used as ink, the very faint pink is invisible. , *(MC-1)* 159
cobalt, *(MC-1)* 150
Cobalt, for example, is an essential element in vitamin B12 (cyanocobalamin)., *(MC-1)* 150
cobalt, nickel, and zinc all have two electrons in their outer (4th or N) electron shell., *(MC-1)* 150
cocoa, chocolate, prunes, and some vegetables, such as spinach. , *(MC-1)* 155
coldlight, *(MC-1)* 49
coliform, typhoid or cholera type., *(MC-1)* 80
collodion tubing surrounded by a saline solution, *(MC-1)* 104-105
color is due to the ability of these complex ions to absorb light of certain wavelengths in the visible spectrum. The remaining light is deprived of the absorbed wavelengths and gives the substance its color. , *(MC-1)* 151
COLOR OF COMPOUNDS, *(MC-1)* 151
color of the flame is a characteristic of the metal and is used for estimating the amount of calcium in the blood by means of a flame photometer, *(MC-1)* 136
combination with oxygen it becomes bright red oxyhemoglobin, *(MC-1)* 42
combustion is simply the combination of the burning substance with oxygen, *(MC-1)* 64
COMBUSTION RESPIRATION, *(MC-1)* 36
complete heart block in which the impulse fails to pass from atria to ventricles, *(MC-1)* 58
compound in which all the bonds are of this type is called a covalent compound., *(MC-1)* 18
concentration of chlorine (0.2 ppm) used to make water safe to drink is sufficient to kill off organisms of the coliform, typhoid or cholera type., *(MC-1)* 80
concentration of hydrogen ions, *(MC-1)* 71
CONCENTRATION OF SOLUTIONS, *(MC-1)* 27
concentration of substances will be expressed in millimoles per liter, *(MC-1)* 28

CONFIGURATIONS OF ATOMS BONDED TOGETHER, *(MC-1)* 21
congestive heart failure the heart fails to pump the blood from the veins to the arteries fast enough, *(MC-1)* 97
contracting heart muscle, *(MC-1)* 52
contracting muscle is electrically negative compared to a resting muscle, *(MC-1)* 52
contracting to resting muscles., *(MC-1)* 52
cooling the skin surface as it evaporates., *(MC-1)* 171
coordinate covalent bond. It is represented by an arrow pointing from the donor atom to the acceptor atom., *(MC-1)* 19
copper (L. cuprum, Cyprus, an island rich in copper) has a characteristic color to which it gives its name, with a bright metallic luster when polished, 161
copper being evenly deposited on the saucepan (the cathode) and the copper anode dissolving, *(MC-1)* 57
copper deficient diet develop a microcytic anemia that responds to injected iron but is resistant to iron by mouth. , *(MC-1)* 162
Copper has two valences, *(MC-1)* 161
copper in our red cells (erythrocuprein) but its function is unknown. , *(MC-1)* 162-163
Copper in the diet assists the absorption of iron, *(MC-1)* 162
Copper is present in some of the enzymes in the human body, for example tyrosinase ,*(MC-1)* 162
copper(II) hydroxide, and magnesium oxide, MgO., *(MC-1)* 88
Copper(II) sulfate dissolves readily in water to give a blue solution, *(MC-1)* 162
Copper(II) sulfate is strongly toxic to the lower organisms but much less so to the higher ones., *(MC-1)* 162
copper(I) chloride, CuCl, *(MC-1)* 161
copper, *(MC-1)* 150
covalent bond is readily broken in favor of forming an ionic link with a metal. , *(MC-1)* 119
COVALENT BOND, *(MC-1)* 18
covalent bonds., *(MC-1)* 22
covalent compound., *(MC-1)* 18
covalent type., *(MC-1)* 82
Cow's milk contains 15 mmol (0.6 g)/pint, mainly as calcium phosphate, *(MC-1)* 139
cupric(copper(II)) compounds, a valence of two, as in copper(II) chloride, CuC12., *(MC-1)* 161
cuprous (copper(I)) compounds, it has a valence of one, as in copper(I) chloride, CuCl, *(MC-1)* 161
Cushing's syndrome. Adrenal steroids are secreted in excess, causing the kidneys to reabsorb too much sodium., *(MC-1)* 116
cuts and bruises. , *(MC-1)* 111
cytochrome in all cells and a number of other enzymes, *(MC-1)* 156
cytochrome oxidase, an enzyme containing iron which facilitates the utilization of oxygen in tissue respiration., *(MC-1)* 151-152
cytochromes situated in the mitochondria., *(MC-1)* 75

Dalton from Lancashire, England, who first used the idea of atoms to explain chemical phenomena, *(MC-1)* 4
Dalton's atomic theory which states that atoms are neither created nor destroyed in normal chemical changes, *(MC-1)* 30
Davy discovered sodium, by electrolysis of caustic soda, NaOH., *(MC-1)* 108
Davy used electrolysis to decompose caustic potash, KOH. , *(MC-1)* 108
Davy, in England in 1807, *(MC-1)* 107
De-ionized water is similar, the salts being removed by passing the water through an ion-exchange resin, *(MC-1)* 79
Dead Sea, *(MC-1)* 85
defibrillator used in appropriate cases of heart attack to stop, *(MC-1)* 58
dehydration due to severe gastroenteritis or cholera., *(MC-1)* 111
dehydration, for example, from diarrhea, vomiting, burns or excessive sweating, *(MC-1)* 93
delocalized because none of them is localized on a particular carbon atom., *(MC-1)* 172
Democritus, over 2000 years ago, originated the word atom, meaning a particle which could not be cut into any smaller pieces (Gr. a, not, +Gr. tomos, cut),, *(MC-1)* 4
dephlogisticated air, *(MC-1)* 144
deuterium = 1 electron + 1 proton + 1 neutron, *(MC-1)* 68
deuterium and gold are shown diagrammatically in Fig. 4.1., *(MC-1)* 10
DEUTERIUM, D, *(MC-1)* 69
device that converts chemical energy into electrical is called a, *(MC-1)* 50
DI- and TRI-PHOSPHATES, *(MC-1)* 147
diabetes, *(MC-1)* 85
diabetic ketosis (failure of the islets of Langerhan's in the pancreas to produce enough insulin),*(MC-1)* 93
diamond (Fig. 5.2] or ionic, as in sodium chloride (Fig. 5.3)., *(MC-1)* 22
Diamond is one of the hardest known materials., *(MC-1)* 166
diamond, and graphite. , *(MC-1)* 166
diarrhea and vomiting, *(MC-1)* 116
Diffusion between solids is far less common than between liquids and gases, *(MC-1)* 3
diffusion of liquids, *(MC-1)* 3
dihydrogen phosphate ions are excreted in the urine and the bicarbonate ions are returned to the plasma to provide additional base reserve, *(MC-1)* 149
disinfectants., *(MC-1)* 126
dissociate into hydrogen and oxygen, *(MC-1)* 72
dissociates, to release more carbonic acid., *(MC-1)* 46
dissolved in a suitable solvent, usually water, *(MC-1)* 86
dissolved oxygen can readily pass to enter the blood flowing through the numerous capillaries in the alveolar walls, *(MC-1)* 42
dissolving dead flesh away from the bone, *(MC-1)* 115
distance from the nucleus increases, there are certain regions where electrons are most likely to be found, *(MC-1)* 11
DISTILLED WATER, *(MC-1)* 79
divalent, *(MC-1)* 17
dolomite, talc, asbestos and other minerals, *(MC-1)* 134
dot on a carbon represents an unpaired electron, so that such a carbon atom has only seven electrons in its outer shell and is consequently very reactive., *(MC-1)* 170
double arrows tell us that the reaction is reversible; by this we mean that it "goes both ways., *(MC-1)* 34
double arrows, *(MC-1)* 34
double bond., *(MC-1)* 19
Drinking water should be free from bacteria. They may be removed by filtration through sand or killed, for instance, by chlorine. , *(MC-1)* 79
drinking water. In fact it could be harmful, for in areas where the water is soft a higher incidence

of heart disease has been noted. , *(MC-1)* 79
dyes to clothing materials with mordants of metallic salts and make coats of many colors, *(MC-1)* 1
dynamic equilibrium. We refer to this equilibrium as dynamic because the forward and reverse reactions continue after the equilibrium has been reached, but their speeds remain equal., *(MC-1)* 34

earth's crust is nearly 50% oxygen, considerably more than any other element., *(MC-1)* 62

earth's crust, *(MC-1)* 108
earth's crust., *(MC-1)* 136
ECG it is often possible to diagnose the abnormality present in the heart, *(MC-1)* 53
edema (Gr. oidema, swelling), *(MC-1)* 97
edema, *(MC-1)* 111
edema; this is seen in heart failure, kidney failures,, liver failure, and starvation., *(MC-1)* 93
EFFECT OF ELECTRIC CURRENT ON LIVING TISSUE, *(MC-1)* 58
eggs, cocoa, chocolate, prunes, and some vegetables, such as spinach. , *(MC-1)* 155
Egypt was Chemia, and when the Arabs invaded Egypt they adopted its divine art as 'al chemia' or alchemy., *(MC-1)* 1
Egyptians and Sumerians had already discovered how to extract gold, copper, silver, lead, and iron from deposits. They could also fix dyes to clothing materials with mordants of metallic salts and make coats of many colors., *(MC-1)* 1
electric current is passed through an electrolyte, it decomposes, the process being called electrolysis., *(MC-1)* 108
ELECTRIC CURRENT ON LIVING TISSUE, *(MC-1)* 58
electric currents. With suitable instruments these currents can be recorded. , *(MC-1)* 52
electric lawn mower will not work without electrical energy. , *(MC-1)* 49
ELECTRICAL ATTRACTIONS AND REPULSIONS, *(MC-1)* 7
electrical attractions to distinguish them from magnetic and gravitational attractions which we are also unable to explain., *(MC-1)* 7
ELECTRICAL ENERGY FROM LIVING ORGANS,*(MC-1)* 52
electrical impulses over the walls of the atria and the ventricles, *(MC-1)* 52
electrical impulses produced by the chemical changes occurring in the living brain., *(MC-1)* 53
electrocardiogram is the record of the electrical impulses produced by the chemical changes in contracting heart muscle, *(MC-1)* 52
electrocardiograph., *(MC-1)* 52
ELECTROCHEMISTRY, *(MC-1)* 49, *(MC-1)* 50
electrocution, *(MC-1)* 58
electroencephalogram is the record of the electrical impulses produced by the chemical changes occurring in the living brain., *(MC-1)* 53
electroencephalograph. It is attached by numerous wires to the subject's head. Multiple recordings are taken simultaneously on very large rolls of paper. , *(MC-1)* 53
ELECTROLYSIS OF SODIUM CHLORIDE SOLUTION, *(MC-1)* 56
ELECTROLYSIS OF SODIUM CHLORIDE, *(MC-1)* 54
electrolysis of water the type of apparatus illustrated in, *(MC-1)* 62
Electrolysis results in copper being evenly deposited on the saucepan (the cathode) and the copper anode dissolving, *(MC-1)* 57
Electrolysis results in copper being evenly deposited on the saucepan, to be copper plated is made to be the cathode in a cell.,*(MC-1)* 57
electrolysis, *(MC-1)* 54
ELECTROLYSIS: The passage of an electric current through water (slightly acidified to increase its electrical conductivity) causes it to dissociate into hydrogen and oxygen, *(MC-1)* 72
electrolyte balance is also upset when the function of certain endocrine glands is disturbed, 93
electrolyte ions in the blood are as follows:, *(MC-1)* 93
electrolyte is a substance which when melted or dissolved in water conducts electricity. , *(MC-1)* 91
electrolyte replenisher, *(MC-1)* 111, *(MC-1)* 112
electrolytes in our body fluids are of this nature, *(MC-1)* 107
ELECTROLYTES, *(MC-1)* 54, *(MC-1)* 93
electrolytic cell., *(MC-1)* 50

Electrolytic cells are probably less well known to you, but they are of great industrial importance. Sodium, chlorine, aluminium and certain household bleaches are just a few examples of substances which are produced in electrolytic cells., *(MC-1)* 50
Electrolytic cells are the reverse of batteries and enable electrical energy to be changed into chemical energy, *(MC-1)* 54
electron e 1/1840 -1, *(MC-1)* 10
electron is negatively charged, *(MC-1)* 9
electron is only about one two-thousandth of the mass of a nucleon, *(MC-1)* 11
electron(s) to another atom, *(MC-1)* 16
electron-pair bond, *(MC-1)* 18
electronic structures meaning that they contain the same number of electrons in their outermost shells which are called the valence shells, *(MC-1)* 12
electrons act rather like a cement., *(MC-1)* 19
electrons are most likely to be found, *(MC-1)* 11
Electrons are transferred from the lead to the lead dioxide and hydrogen ions., *(MC-1)* 51
electrons attract the oppositely charged ions which are therefore kept in position., *(MC-1)* 19
electrons in the outer three shells, *(MC-1)* 11
electrons in their outer shell., *(MC-1)* 16
electrons on to the cathode, making it negative so that it attracts the sodium ions Na+. When they reach the cathode they are reduced by the electrons to sodium atoms; thus, metallic sodium is formed., *(MC-1)* 54
electrons results in the formation of positive ions, *(MC-1)* 19
electrons tend to flow from contracting to resting muscles., *(MC-1)* 52
electrons then flow back to the battery, completing the circuit, *(MC-1)* 55
electrons which revolve around the nucleus, *(MC-1)* 10
electrostatic bond called the hydrogen bond. It is this type of bond which causes molecules of water to join together, *(MC-1)* 20
element as a substance which cannot be split by any chemical means into simpler substances, *(MC-1)* 2
elements are arranged in order of increasing atomic number, then at definite intervals, or periods, similar elements occur, *(MC-1)* 12
elements form bonds they acquire stable numbers of electrons in their outer shell., *(MC-1)* 16
empirical formula is the simplest possible formula and merely states the simplest atomic ratio of the elements in the compound., *(MC-1)* 22
empirical formulas are used for those with giant structures., *(MC-1)* 30
endothermic, absorbs heat, then during the chemical change heat is converted into chemical energy, so that the chemicals formed have more chemical energy than those which produced them.
energy given out is in excess, it is exothermic, *(MC-1)* 23
energy given out is less than the energy which we supply, the reaction is endothermic, *(MC-1)* 23
energy is always given out when bonds are made, *(MC-1)* 23
Energy is what we and machines need to do work, *(MC-1)* 49
energy transfer currency in cellular respiration., *(MC-1)* 149
enzymes require magnesium as a cofactor., *(MC-1)* 135
enzymes., *(MC-1)* 62
Epsom salts), *(MC-1)* 99
equal volumes of gases contain the same number of molecules, *(MC-1)* 63
equals" sign can now be used since a final check shows that the equation is now balanced., *(MC-1)* 32
equals" sign is not used because this equation is not balanced, *(MC-1)* 31
equation for the reaction that occurs when iron is burnt in chlorine gas to form iron(III) chloride, *(MC-1)* 30
equation is now balanced., *(MC-1)* 32

equation must be balanced, *(MC-1)* 30
equilibrium as dynamic because the forward and reverse reactions continue after the equilibrium has been reached, but their speeds remain equal., *(MC-1)* 34
equilibrium has been reached, but their speeds remain equal., *(MC-1)* 34
ESTIMATION of SODIUM and POTASSIUM in BLOOD, *(MC-1)* 117
etching glass. , *(MC-1)* 120
ethane C2H6 , *(MC-1)* 168
ethyl chloride, *(MC-1)* 171
exothermic (Gr. exo, out, + Gr. therme, heat)., *(MC-1)* 49
exothermic reaction giving out a great deal of energy can be explosive such as hydrogen and oxygen combining under certain conditions to form water., *(MC-1)* 23
exothermic, *(MC-1)* 23, *(MC-1)* 64
expectorant.", *(MC-1)* 113
explosives., *(MC-1)* 144
extracellular water, *(MC-1)* 76

felspar (sodium aluminum silicate), *(MC-1)* 108
ferric chloride, FeCl3., *(MC-1)* 153
ferric indicates a valence of 3, for example, ferric chloride, FeCl3., *(MC-1)* 153
ferric, iron(III) salts, *(MC-1)* 153
ferricyanide) ion, Fe(CN)63- , *(MC-1)* 151
ferritin, *(MC-1)* 156
ferrous and ferric compounds are called iron(II) and iron(III) compounds, respectively, the roman numerals indicating the valence. , *(MC-1)* 153
ferrous chloride, FeCl2,, *(MC-1)* 153
ferrous indicates a valence of two, for example, ferrous chloride, FeCl2,, *(MC-1)* 153
Ferrous, iron(II), salts are much more readily absorbed from the intestine than are ferric, iron(III) salts, *(MC-1)* 153
fertilizers, poisons and explosives., *(MC-1)* 144
Fig. 02.1, *(MC-1)* 5 Models of molecules, (a) hydrogen H_2; (b) water H_2O; (c) chloroform $CHCl_3$.
Fig. 04.1, *(MC-1)* 10 Deuterium atom and gold atom. Representation of particle structure: e, electron; p, proton; n, neutron.
Fig. 04.2, *(MC-1)* 12 Gold atom, showing central nucleus surrounded by electron shells.
Fig. 04.3, *(MC-1)* 15 Carbon isotopes: (a) carbon 12; (b) carbon 13; (c) carbon 14.
Fig. 05.1, *(MC-1)* 20 Metallic bonding. The metal ions are represented by M^+ and electrons by e^-.
Fig. 05.2, *(MC-1)* 22 Diamond-covalent giant structure. Each carbon atom is joined by covalent bonds to four adjacent carbon atoms.
Fig. 05.3, *(MC-1)* 23 Sodium chloride-ionic giant structure. The cube is drawn to show the pattern. The structure is held together by the attraction between positive Na^+ and negative Cl^- ions.
Fig. 07.1, *(MC-1)* 33 Titration, using burette and flask
Fig. 08.1, *(MC-1)* 36 Apparatus for experiment 1-combustion
Fig. 08.2, *(MC-1)* 37 Apparatus for experiment 2-combustion
Fig. 08.3, *(MC-1)* 39 Apparatus for experiment 2-respiration
Fig. 08.4, *(MC-1)* 41 a)air passages to alveoli, b)capillary network in aveoli
Fig. 08.5, *(MC-1)* 44 a)diffusion of oxygen from red cells to mitochondria of tissue cells, b)mitochondria cut across to show internal structure
Fig. 08.6, *(MC-1)* 45 Diffusion of carbonic acid from cell to capillary
Fig. 09.1, *(MC-1)* 51 Voltaic cell
Fig. 09.2, *(MC-1)* 53 ECG-a)normal, b)abnormal,
Fig. 09.3, *(MC-1)* 55 Electrolysis of sodium chloride
Fig. 09.4., *(MC-1)* 57 Copper electroplating
Fig. 09.5., *(MC-1)* 59 Heart
Fig. 10.1, *(MC-1)* 63 Electrolysis of water
Fig. 10.2, *(MC-1)* 65, Gas jar and deflagrating spoon
Fig. 11.1, *(MC-1)* 68 Hydrogen atom
Fig. 11.2, *(MC-1)* 72 Collection of hydrogen
Fig. 12.1, *(MC-1)* 80 Distillation of water
Fig. 12.4, *(MC-1)* 83 Hyrogen bonding between water molecules
Fig. 12.5, *(MC-1)* 84 Sodium ions and chloride ions surrounded by water molecules
Fig. 14.1, *(MC-1)* 96 Cells bursting in water, cells crenating in saline
Fig. 14.2, *(MC-1)* 96 Osmotic effect of semipermeable membrane
Fig. 14.3, *(MC-1)* 98 Capillary loop
Fig. 14.4, *(MC-1)* 100 Filtration funnel
Fig. 14.5, *(MC-1)* 101 Sterilization by bacteriological filtration
Fig. 14.6, *(MC-1)* 102 Kidney showing branches of renal artery
Fig. 14.7, *(MC-1)* 103 Glomerulus and Bowmen's capsule
Fig. 14.8, *(MC-1)* 104 Kidney tubule

Fig. 15.1, *(MC-1)* 111 Saline transfusion apparatus
Fig. 17.1, *(MC-1)* 130 X-ray of pelvis
Fig. 17.2, *(MC-1)* 132 Barium meal showing stomach
Fig. 17.4, *(MC-1)* 137 Lime kiln
Fig. 18.1, *(MC-1)* 146 Root nodules
Fig. 19.1, *(MC-1)* 157 Iron absorption by mucosal cell of the gut
Fig. 19.2, *(MC-1)* 158 Red cell in iron deficiency
Fig. 19.3, *(MC-1)* 160 Skeleton of vitamin B12
Fig. 19.4, *(MC-1)* 161 Red cells in pernicious anemia
Fig. 20.1, *(MC-1)* 168 Conformations of butane
filter in each glomerulus is essentially composed of two layers, the capillary wall and the lining of Bowman's capsule, *(MC-1)* 101
FILTRATION IN THE KIDNEY, *(MC-1)* 101
filtration occurs in the renal glomeruli of which there are about a million in each kidney,*(MC-1)* 101
filtration process is the first step in the formation of urine, *(MC-1)* 103
FILTRATION, 100
firefly, *(MC-1)* 49
fireworks, incendiary shells, smoke bombs, tracer bullets, pesticides, and phosphoric acid, H3PO4., *(MC-1)* 147
flame photometer, *(MC-1)* 117 *(MC-1)* 136
flashlight photography, flares and fireworks., *(MC-1)* 134
flavoproteins and cytochromes situated in the mitochondria., *(MC-1)* 75
flesh away from the bone, *(MC-1)* 115
Flour has added calcium carbonate so that bread can be an important dietetic source, *(MC-1)* 139
fluid retention which causes waterlogging of the tissues, *(MC-1)* 93
fluorescent lights and luminous dials., *(MC-1)* 163
fluoridation of the water supplies continues to be introduced in new areas., *(MC-1)* 121
fluoride has also been blamed for gastrointestinal disorders, *(MC-1)* 121
fluoride ion, F-, are poisonous unless very diluted; for this reason there has been much controversy over the addition of fluoride to the water supply., *(MC-1)* 120
fluoride to the water supply., *(MC-1)* 120
fluorides, the salts of hydrofluoric acid, have been found to protect teeth from decay., *(MC-1)* 120
Fluorine (L. fluere, to flow) is a pale yellow corrosive gas which reacts with practically all organic and inorganic substances., *(MC-1)* 120
fluorine compound of medical importance is the general anesthetic halothane (fluothane, I.C.I.), *(MC-1)* 121
fluorine is chemically similar to Chlorine it is too reactive to be used as an antiseptic, *(MC-1)* 120
fluorine valence shell is powerful, hence its great reactivity., *(MC-1)* 120
fluorine, F2 with the lowest boiling and melting points and the smallest atoms in the group, *(MC-1)* 120
Foods which are rich in phosphorus include eggs, milk, cheese, almonds, and fish, especially sardines., *(MC-1)* 148
foot drop" and other forms of muscular paralysis., *(MC-1)* 58
FORMATION OF BONDS, *(MC-1)* 16
formula may represent either one particle or one mole of particles; that is a gram-formula,*(MC-1)* 26
formula weight (or molecular weight) of carbon dioxide = 44., *(MC-1)* 25
formula weight given in grams., *(MC-1)* 6
formula weight of a substance is easily calculated from its formula and the atomic weights of the elements in the substance., *(MC-1)* 25
FORMULA WEIGHT OF A SUBSTANCE, *(MC-1)* 24
formula weight of carbon dioxide, *(MC-1)* 25

formula weight"., *(MC-1)* 25
formula weights of the substances, *(MC-1)* 32
forward reaction, *(MC-1)* 34
frog's leg., *(MC-1)* 122
Fuels, such as oil, gas, and coal are products of animal and vegetable decay, *(MC-1)* 50
fur" in a kettle, *(MC-1)* 78
Fused rings are rings that share a pair of atoms, *(MC-1)* 173

g-atom and a g-formula contain the same number of particles, that is, one mole., *(MC-1)* 26
g-atom of an element. This is its atomic weight in grams., *(MC-1)* 26
g-formula of a substance, *(MC-1)* 26
g-formula., *(MC-1)* 26
g/liter into moles/liter, *(MC-1)* 27
gain of electrons, is known as, *(MC-1)* 21
gas in chemical processes, *(MC-1)* 1
gas of the woods, *(MC-1)* 1
gas sylvester-the wild untameable gas of the woods, *(MC-1)* 1
gaseous (g), *(MC-1)* 32
gases with the following volume composition:, *(MC-1)* 47
Gases, liquids, and low melting-point solids have molecular structures., *(MC-1)* 22
giant molecules, *(MC-1)* 4
giant structure, *(MC-1)* 23
giant structures are represented by an empirical formula (a molecular formula is not appropriate as there are no molecules present)., *(MC-1)* 22
giant structures., *(MC-1)* 21, *(MC-1)* 30
Globulin molecules are bigger. But there are far more molecules of albumin, *(MC-1)* 97
globulin, *(MC-1)* 97
glomeruli of which there are about a million in each kidney. , *(MC-1)* 101
glucose, C6H12O6 tell you about the glucose molecule?, *(MC-1)* 6
gold, *(MC-1)* 1
gram-atom, *(MC-1)* 26
gram-formula, *(MC-1)* 26
gram-molecular (g-molecule) is usually used instead of g-formula., *(MC-1)* 26
grams of the element that contains one mole of atoms, *(MC-1)* 24
grams of the substance that contains one mole of particles., *(MC-1)* 24-25
Graphite is extremely soft, being used in lubricants and "lead" pencils. , *(MC-1)* 166
graphite. , *(MC-1)* 166
gravitational attractions which we are also unable to explain., *(MC-1)* 7
Great Salt Lake in Utah, evaporation has resulted in the concentration of the salts being four to eight times that in the open ocean, *(MC-1)* 85
green plants, *(MC-1)* 70
Grotto, *(MC-1)* 81
gypsum (calcium sulfate, CaSO4•2H2O), *(MC-1)* 136

H

H+ ions gives it the properties of a strong acid able to digest living tissue., *(MC-1)* 122
H_2O molecules are hydrogen-bonded to form one gigantic grouping, *(MC-1)* 83
Haber process, *(MC-1)* 74
halogen atoms accept electrons makes them very powerful oxidizing agents., *(MC-1)* 119
halogen has seven electrons in its outer (valence) shell., *(MC-1)* 118
halogen with the smallest atoms, fluorine, *(MC-1)* 120
halogens each need one electron to convert the outer (valence) electron shell into a stable octet., *(MC-1)* 119
halogens readily unite with heated metals and are converted into the ions F-, Cl-, Br-, and I-., *(MC-1)* 119
halogens., *(MC-1)* 118
halothane (fluothane, I.C.I.), *(MC-1)* 121
HALOTHANE, *(MC-1)* 121
hammer which knocks a nail into the wall for us, possesses energy simply because it is moving, *(MC-1)* 49
handkerchief canceled out the charge on the polyethylene strips, *(MC-1)* 9
handkerchief, *(MC-1)* 9
hardening" of oils and requires a catalyst, *(MC-1)* 74
hardest known materials., *(MC-1)* 166
Hb represents unoxygenated (reduced) hemoglobin, *(MC-1)* 158
HbO2 represents oxyhemoglobin. , *(MC-1)* 158
heart attack to stop, *(MC-1)* 58
heart block in which the impulse fails to pass from atria to ventricles, *(MC-1)* 58
heart disease has been noted. , *(MC-1)* 79
heart failure the heart fails to pump the blood from the veins to the arteries fast enough, *(MC-1)* 97
heart failure, kidney failures,, liver failure, and starvation., *(MC-1)* 93
heart muscle or to the special atrio-ventricular conducting system (see Fig. 9.5) this normal progression is disturbed., *(MC-1)* 52
heart muscle, *(MC-1)* 52
heart there is an orderly progression of the muscular contraction and its associated electrical impulses over the walls of the atria and the ventricles, *(MC-1)* 52
heat exhaustion in the tropics., *(MC-1)* 112
heavy water" It is demonstrably denser than ordinary water and has freezing and boiling points which are slightly higher, *(MC-1)* 69
hematinic.", *(MC-1)* 154
hemocyanin containing up to 20 atoms of copper in its molecule., *(MC-1)* 163
hemoglobin (hypochromic), *(MC-1)* 158
hemoglobin and is blue in color, *(MC-1)* 42
Hemoglobin before it combines with the oxygen is called reduced hemoglobin and is blue in color, *(MC-1)* 42
Hemoglobin has a complex molecular structure incorporating iron. It can bind molecular oxygen in a loose and easily reversible combination. The iron itself is not oxidized and remains in the iron(II) state throughout. , *(MC-1)* 158
hemoglobin in the red cells, *(MC-1)* 156
hemoglobin molecule for oxygen carriage, thus depriving the tissues of oxygen, *(MC-1)* 158
hemolysis, *(MC-1)* 94
high melting-point solids, however, the atoms or ions bond together not as discrete molecules but as a giant structure of no definite size., *(MC-1)* 22
hydrocarbons are paraffin, candle grease, and petrol. They must be distinguished from carbohydrates, *(MC-1)* 71
hydrochloric acid
HCl, *(MC-1)* 122
hydrochloric acid from our stomachs, *(MC-1)* 85

Hydrochloric acid is a typical strong mineral acid with the characteristics described in Chapter 13, *(MC-1)* 122
hydrochloric acid produced in this stomach could digest a living frog's leg., *(MC-1)* 122
hydrochloric acid, HCl from the stomach, or from excessive alkali therapy which can happen in the treatment of peptic ulcer, *(MC-1)* 89
Hydrochloric acid, reacts with alkalis to form salts called chlorides, *(MC-1)* 122
hydrofluoric acid, HF is so corrosive that it cannot be contained in a glass vessel. In fact, it is used for etching glass. , *(MC-1)* 120
hydrogen = 1 electron + 1 proton, *(MC-1)* 68
hydrogen and hydroxyl ions combine to form water., *(MC-1)* 79
hydrogen and oxygen combining under certain conditions to form water., *(MC-1)* 23
Hydrogen appears on its own in the table. This is because its atomic structure is unique in that its K shell is incomplete and its nucleus is simply a proton; it contains no neutrons. All the other atoms contain neutrons., *(MC-1)* 13
hydrogen atoms are therefore needed to take up the two "surplus" electrons of calcium, *(MC-1)* 17
HYDROGEN BOND, *(MC-1)* 20
hydrogen cannot be detected by our senses as it is colorless, odorless and tasteless. It liquefies at -253°C to form a pale blue liquid,, *(MC-1)* 73
hydrogen chloride is a weaker acid when dissolved in acetic acid than when it is dissolved in water., *(MC-1)* 87
Hydrogen combines much less readily with nitrogen, neither exploding nor burning in it., *(MC-1)* 73
hydrogen combines with oxygen to form water, the bonds between the atoms are of covalent type., *(MC-1)* 82
hydrogen combines with oxygen, nitrogen, or fluorine, these elements draw the electrical charge, or the electron-pair, away from the hydrogen, producing a slight positive charge on the hydrogen atom, *(MC-1)* 20
Hydrogen compounds are widely distributed in cells and body fluids. , *(MC-1)* 74
hydrogen fluoride one end of the molecule is positively charged and the other negatively charged., *(MC-1)* 20
HYDROGEN FROM WATER, *(MC-1)* 72
Hydrogen gas is the lightest of all elements, being fourteen times lighter than air., *(MC-1)* 73
Hydrogen has the simplest of all atoms. Each atom consists of a single proton around which orbits a single electron, *(MC-1)* 68
hydrogen ignites spontaneously., *(MC-1)* 109
HYDROGEN IN THE BODY CHEMISTRY, *(MC-1)* 74
hydrogen ion, H+ which gives acids their bite., *(MC-1)* 71
hydrogen ions, *(MC-1)* 71
hydrogen is attracted to the negatively charged fluorine atom (in fact, to one of its nonbonding electron-pairs) in another hydrogen fluoride molecule., *(MC-1)* 20
Hydrogen is continually escaping from the earth's atmosphere, of which it forms only one part in a million by volume (much less by weight), *(MC-1)* 71
Hydrogen is most commonly found on earth in the form of its oxide, *(MC-1)* 71
hydrogen is only the ninth most common element by weight after oxygen, silicon, aluminium, iron, calcium, sodium, potassium, and magnesium., *(MC-1)* 70-71
Hydrogen is the lightest of all elements and has the smallest atoms., *(MC-1)* 68
hydrogen is usually prepared by the action of dilute sulfuric or hydrochloric acid on granulated zinc, *(MC-1)* 71
hydrogen is very reactive. It has a strong attraction for oxygen and chlorine., *(MC-1)* 73
hydrogen of the acid is replaced by a metal, sodium, to form a sulfate., *(MC-1)* 90
Hydrogen peroxide is broken down on heating into water and molecular oxygen, *(MC-1)* 66
Hydrogen was first described to the Royal Society, London, by Henry Cavendish in 1766 as "inflammable air, *(MC-1)* 70

hydrogen which means water producer (Gr. hydro, water, + Gr. gen, producer)., *(MC-1)* 70
hydrogen, *(MC-1)* 71
hydroxonium ion and that its structure is H2O H+, *(MC-1)* 86
hydroxonium ion that confers on aqueous solutions of acids their typical properties., *(MC-1)* 86
hydroxonium ions into water, *(MC-1)* 88
hydroxy-apatite, Ca(OH)2•3Ca3(PO4)2. , *(MC-1)* 148
hydroxyl ions makes the solution strongly alkaline (and highly poisonous), enabling it to neutralize acids, *(MC-1)* 114
hydroxyl or oxide ions, for example, copper(II) hydroxide, and magnesium oxide, MgO., *(MC-1)* 88
hypchlorites NaClO, *(MC-1)* 122
hyperparathyroidism, *(MC-1)* 140
hyperthyroidism or thyrotoxicosis) causes the rate of metabolism (chemical reactions in cells) to be excessive., *(MC-1)* 127
hypertonic saline is to remove fluid from the tissues osmotically, thus reducing edema, *(MC-1)* 111
hypertonic saline pack is most effective just after it is applied., *(MC-1)* 112
Hypertonic saline solutions are used in dressing packs for the treatment of varicose ulcers, *(MC-1)* 111
hypertonic saline" is used to describe a solution having a salt concentration which is greater than that in blood, for example, 10% saline (3200 mOsm/liter)., *(MC-1)* 99
hypochlorites, *(MC-1)* 121
hypochlorous acid HClO, *(MC-1)* 122
hypochlorous acid are called hypochlorites. Since they are potent oxidizing agents they can be used for bleaching such as bleaching powder, *(MC-1)* 123
Hypochlorous acid differs greatly from hydrochloric acid. It is a weak acid and so in solution it dissociates only slightly into ions., *(MC-1)* 123
Hypochlorous acid solution is pale yellow, *(MC-1)* 123
hypokalemia , *(MC-1)* 116
hyponatremia (Gr. hypo, low, +Gr. natrium, sodium, +Gr. haima, blood). , *(MC-1)* 116
hypotonic saline" is used to describe a solution having a salt concentration weaker than that in blood., *(MC-1)* 99

ice (solid) into water (liquid) and then into steam (gas)., *(MC-1)* 2
ice forms on the surface of a pond and not at its bottom,, *(MC-1)* 81
Ice is therefore less dense than liquid water and so it floats., *(MC-1)* 83
igneous rocks, *(MC-1)* 108
incendiary shells, smoke bombs, tracer bullets, pesticides, and phosphoric acid, H3PO4., *(MC-1)* 147
indicators., *(MC-1)* 33
inflammation, they cannot traverse the capillary walls,*(MC-1)* 97
insulin),*(MC-1)* 93
International System, there is only one base unit for each physical quantity based on the metric system, *(MC-1)* 28
intracellular and extracellular fluid lies in the concentration of sodium and potassium ions, *(MC-1)* 94
intracellular water, *(MC-1)* 76
Intravenous preparations of sterile normal saline are frequently used for transfusion, *(MC-1)* 111
Iodine (Gr. iodes, violet) is a grayish-black lustrous solid. When slightly warmed it gives off a blue-violet vapor with an irritating odor., *(MC-1)* 126
iodine atom is screened from the outer (valence) electron shell by the four intervening completed electron shells., *(MC-1)* 120
iodine can then be removed by 1 to 2 drops of sodium thiosulfate solution, to make the water palatable., *(MC-1)* 79
iodine from the diet is taken up by the thyroid gland to make thyroxine which, combined with protein, is the main ingredient of the thyroid hormone, *(MC-1)* 126
Iodine has considerable medical importance., *(MC-1)* 126
Iodine in the form of iodine tincture (USP) or weak iodine solution (BP) has long been used as an antiseptic and is still considered as one of the more effective skin disinfectants., *(MC-1)* 126
iodine kills bacteria by oxidizing them. This effect is diminished by the presence of organic matter. So the site to be treated should be previously cleaned, *(MC-1)* 126
iodine may be used: 3 drops to 1 pint of water for 1 hour., *(MC-1)* 79
Iodine with the largest atoms and molecules, *(MC-1)* 120
ion in the above example has a stable octet of electrons in its outer shell., *(MC-1)* 17
ion-exchange resin, *(MC-1)* 79
ionic bond and sodium chloride is said to be an ionic compound., *(MC-1)* 17
IONIC BOND, *(MC-1)* 16
ionic bond, *(MC-1)* 9
ionic compound, *(MC-1)* 17
ions. Their nature will be described in the next chapter, *(MC-1)* 6
iron binding capacity of the serum which is normally 4.5 to 8 mmol/liter (250 to 450 mg/cm3.), *(MC-1)* 157-158
iron content of an average man is about 80 mmol (4.5 g). Of this about 60% is in red cells (hemoglobin), 20% is in muscles (myoglobin) and tissue enzymes (cytochrome oxidase, peroxidase, catalase) and 20% is stored in the liver, spleen, and bone marrow (ferritin and hemosiderin)., *(MC-1)* 157
iron deficiency anemia there is insufficient iron available for the bone marrow to synthesize adequate hemoglobin. So the red cells are smaller than normal (microcytic) and incompletely filled with hemoglobin (hypochromic), *(MC-1)* 158
iron from intestinal mucosa to the liver and also the tissue cells involves a plasma protein (transferrin), *(MC-1)* 156
Iron from white flour is more readily available than from whole-meal flour. , *(MC-1)* 155
Iron is absorbed into the cells of the intestinal mucosa in the iron(II) (Fe2+) state., *(MC-1)* 156
iron is continually being recycled, *(MC-1)* 156-157
iron is mainly from the small intestine, *(MC-1)* 156

iron is more than normally efficient in people with iron deficiency. This is because the normal person is protected against absorbing too much iron by a mechanism which is essentially chemical. , *(MC-1)* 156
Iron is present in meat, especially liver and kidney, also eggs, cocoa, chocolate, prunes, and some vegetables, such as spinach. , *(MC-1)* 155
iron is present in the greatest amount, enough to make a fairly large nail. It is best known as an essential part of the hemoglobin molecule, required for the transport of oxygen, but it is also involved in a number of enzyme systems, particularly those involved in tissue respiration, *(MC-1)* 150
iron is reduced, the normal being 1 to 3 mmol/liter (60 to 180 mg/cm3)., *(MC-1)* 157
Iron is stored in the liver, also in the form of ferritin, *(MC-1)* 156
iron is stored. This stored iron normally tides the infant over the first few months of life until the child is weaned., *(MC-1)* 156
iron itself is not oxidized and remains in the iron(II) state throughout. , *(MC-1)* 158
IRON METABOLISM, *(MC-1)* 155
iron requirement is greatest during the course of reproductive life to replace iron lost during menstruation and pregnancy., *(MC-1)* 156
iron(II) (Fe2+) state., *(MC-1)* 156
iron(II) and iron(III) compounds, respectively, the roman numerals indicating the valence. , *(MC-1)* 153
Iron(II) carbonate is insoluble in water but dissolves slowly in the stomach and gives a low concentration of iron(II) ions., *(MC-1)* 154
Iron(II) gluconate ionizes only slightly in solution, *(MC-1)* 154
iron(II) sulfate (e.g. Fersolate, Glaxo) provide one of the most convenient and economical ways of prescribing iron for adults and are usually well tolerated. Its USP category is "hematinic.", *(MC-1)* 154
iron(II), salts are much more readily absorbed from the intestine than are ferric, iron(III) salts, *(MC-1)* 153
iron(III) chloride, *(MC-1)* 30
iron(III) compounds, respectively, the roman numerals indicating the valence. , *(MC-1)* 153
iron, cobalt, nickel, and zinc all have two electrons in their outer (4th or N) electron shell,*(MC-1)* 150
iron-binding capacity is increased in iron deficiency and is one of the more reliable indications that this condition is present, *(MC-1)* 158
iron-deficiency anemia the serum iron is reduced, the normal being 1 to 3 mmol/liter (60 to 180 mg/cm3)., *(MC-1)* 157
isomers, *(MC-1)* 169
isotonic saline" is used to describe a salt solution (0.85% sodium chloride in water) which has the same osmotic pressure as the salts in the blood. , *(MC-1)* 98
isotonic with living tissue it does not disturb the osmotic equilibrium of the cells and does not cause the stinging sensation that water may produce on cuts and bruises. , *(MC-1)* 111
isotonic, *(MC-1)* 98
isotope of iodine, *(MC-1)* 129
isotopes (Gr. iso, same, +Gr. topos, place), *(MC-1)* 13
ISOTOPES OF HYDROGEN, *(MC-1)* 68
isotopes resemble hydrogen in that their atoms contain one proton and one electron, but in addition they also contain 1 or 2 neutrons in the nucleus, *(MC-1)* 68
ISOTOPES, *(MC-1)* 13
isotopes, particularly those produced artificially, are unstable and radioactive., *(MC-1)* 13

ketosis (failure of the islets of Langerhan's in the pancreas to produce enough insulin),*(MC-1)* 93
kidney disease and cardiac failure., *(MC-1)* 123
kidney diseases too much acid urine may be produced, resulting in renal alkalosis, *(MC-1)* 89
kidney failures,, liver failure, and starvation., *(MC-1)* 93
kidney tubules. This reabsorption is controlled by steroid hormones from the adrenal cortex, especially aldosterone., *(MC-1)* 115
KIDNEY, *(MC-1)* 101
kidney, also eggs, cocoa, chocolate, prunes, and some vegetables, such as spinach. , *(MC-1)* 155
kidney, or an animal, either man or dog, *(MC-1)* 165
kidney, the filtration force is provided by the blood pressure, *(MC-1)* 101
kidneys provide a slower control mechanism. , *(MC-1)* 89
kidneys which, provided they are healthy, secrete a more acid urine if there is a tendency to acidosis and a more alkaline urine if there is a tendency to alkalosis., *(MC-1)* 89
kill all known organisms., *(MC-1)* 81
kinetic energy, *(MC-1)* 49
kinetic theory (Gr. kineo, I move), *(MC-1)* 3
kiss of life, *(MC-1)* 60
Kitchen smells, unless we are careful, quickly pervade the whole house, *(MC-1)* 3

lactic acid from sour milk, *(MC-1)* 165
Langerhan's in the pancreas to produce enough insulin),*(MC-1)* 93
laughing gas" (nitrous oxide, N2O) and for his invention of the miner's safety lamp., *(MC-1)* 107
Lavoisier then put forward the theory of combustion which we hold today, *(MC-1)* 38
Lavoisier, the French chemist, whose brilliant career was truncated by the guillotine, realized that combustion provided the clue to the chemistry of respiration., *(MC-1)* 36
law of conservation of energy is a fundamental law of nature. It states that provided there is no change in mass, energy cannot be created or destroyed. It can be changed in form, that is, changed into some other kind of energy., *(MC-1)* 49
law of conservation of energy tells us that this heat cannot be created from nothing. Some other form of energy must have been converted into heat., *(MC-1)* 49
lead poisoning., *(MC-1)* 79
lead, lead dioxide and acid are mixed in a beaker, the chemical energy is changed into heat., *(MC-1)* 51
lead, Pb with shell structure 2, 8, 18, 32, 18, 4, *(MC-1)* 13
lead-I right arm and left arm , *(MC-1)* 52
lead-II right arm and left leg , *(MC-1)* 52
lead-III left arm and left leg, *(MC-1)* 52
life force, *(MC-1)* 165
lightest of all elements, being fourteen times lighter than air., *(MC-1)* 73
Lightning causes a little nitrogen and oxygen in the air to combine to form nitric oxide,*(MC-1)* 146
like charges repel., *(MC-1)* 9
lime was prepared in the first century A.D. by the Romans, who called it calx, the metal was not isolated until 1808 by Davy., *(MC-1)* 136
limestone (calcium carbonate, CaCO3), *(MC-1)* 136
limestone and acid in a bottle to produce carbon dioxide, it burst the bottle., *(MC-1)* 1
Limewater is calcium hydroxide dissolved in water, *(MC-1)* 138
limewater turns cloudy provides a sensitive means of detecting carbon dioxide, *(MC-1)* 138
LINKING OF WATER MOLECULES, *(MC-1)* 82
liquid (l), *(MC-1)* 32
Liquid nitrogen, which boils at -196°C and freezes at -210°C, is clear, colorless and odorless, resembling water, *(MC-1)* 144
Lithium carbonate is a white amorphous or microcrystalline powder, *(MC-1)* 114
lithium in the treatment of certain mental disorders, *(MC-1)* 106
lithium is the lightest of all metals but has a harder consistency, *(MC-1)* 109
Lithium on the other hand is generally less reactive than sodium, as might be inferred from its atomic structure., *(MC-1)* 107
Lithium reacts with water similarly but less vigorously, *(MC-1)* 109
LITHIUM, *(MC-1)* 106
Lithium, sodium, and potassium react with water to form the hydroxide and hydrogen gas., *(MC-1)* 109
liver and kidney, also eggs, cocoa, chocolate, prunes, and some vegetables, such as spinach. , *(MC-1)* 155
liver failure, and starvation., *(MC-1)* 93
long chain formula is characteristic of plastics, *(MC-1)* 171
Long chains are an arrangement that contains thousands of atoms, *(MC-1)* 171
losing electron(s) to another atom, *(MC-1)* 16
lungs fail to expel carbon dioxide, CO2 rapidly enough to prevent the carbonic acid, H2CO3 level in the blood from rising, *(MC-1)* 89
lungs provide a very quick reaction to change in pH; the kidneys provide a slower control mechanism. , *(MC-1)* 89

macromolecules, contain thousands of atoms, *(MC-1)* 4
magnesite, dolomite, talc, asbestos and other minerals, *(MC-1)* 134
Magnesium (from Magnesia, in Thessaly) is a light, silvery-white metal., 134
Magnesium (Mg), *(MC-1)* 131
Magnesium and calcium are chemically related, both belonging to the group known as the alkaline earth metals, *(MC-1)* 131
Magnesium and calcium have a harder consistency than sodium and potassium and their hydroxides have a weaker alkalinity than those of the alkali metals., *(MC-1)* 133
magnesium as a cofactor., *(MC-1)* 135
magnesium bicarbonate in the water. If the water is boiled the bicarbonate breaks down., *(MC-1)* 77
magnesium deficiency can occur as a result of severe diarrhea, kidney failure or infected burns., *(MC-1)* 136
magnesium hydroxide, Mg(OH)2 (or "Milk of Magnesia) used as a mild antacid usually in the form of a suspension in water., *(MC-1)* 134
Magnesium hydroxide, or Milk of Magnesia, for example, is widely used as an antacid for stomach complaints; in contrast sodium hydroxide is so alkaline that it is corrosive and can destroy the stomach wall., *(MC-1)* 133
magnesium in the body is present in the skeleton, combined with calcium and phosphorus to form the complex salts which give bone its rigidity, *(MC-1)* 135
MAGNESIUM IN THE BODY, *(MC-1)* 135
magnesium is 0.6 to 1 mmol/liter (1.5 to 2.6 mg/100 cm3)., *(MC-1)* 135
Magnesium is essential in the diet although the daily need is not known., *(MC-1)* 136
magnesium is ignited it burns with a blinding white flame and is oxidized to magnesium oxide., *(MC-1)* 65
Magnesium is the eighth most abundant element by weight in the earth's crust, where it occurs in combined form as magnesite, dolomite, talc, asbestos and other minerals, *(MC-1)* 134
magnesium oxide, MgO., *(MC-1)* 65, *(MC-1)* 88
magnesium stearate) is produced., *(MC-1)* 78
magnesium sulfate as an osmotic purgative and poultice has already been described (Chapter 14). Its USP category is "anticonvulsant; cathartic.", *(MC-1)* 135
magnesium sulfate, MgSO4 which usually occurs combined with "water of crystallization" as MgSO4•7H2O as in crystals of Epsom salts., *(MC-1)* 135
magnetic and gravitational attractions which we are also unable to explain., *(MC-1)* 7
magnetite, Fe3O4 and hematite, Fe2O3, or iron(II) carbonate (ferrous carbonate) such as siderite, FeCO3 to metallic iron in varying degrees of purity., *(MC-1)* 153
malic acid from apples, *(MC-1)* 165
Manganese (L. magnes, magnet) is a gray-white metal resembling iron but harder and very brittle, *(MC-1)* 152
Manganese deficiency has not been demonstrated in man, *(MC-1)* 152
Manganese deficiency occurs in animals, causing sterility in male rats and failure of lactation in female rats; pregnant sows with manganese deficiency may reabsorb the fetus or produce undersized weakly offspring; in chicks manganese deprivation causes deformities of the legs and spine., *(MC-1)* 152
manganese deprivation causes deformities of the legs and spine., *(MC-1)* 152
manganese interferes with iron absorption, causing iron deficiency anemia., *(MC-1)* 152
manganese is present in a considerable number of enzymes, for example, choline esterase, the enzyme responsible for removing acetyl choline as soon as soon as it has completed one of its many functions such as the conduction of stimuli from nerves to muscles, causing the muscles to contract, *(MC-1)* 152
manganese, *(MC-1)* 150
Manganese, iron, cobalt, nickel, and zinc all have two electrons in their outer (4th or N) electron shell., *(MC-1)* 150

mass number of the carbon isotope shown in Fig. 4.3(a) is therefore 12, *(MC-1)* 15
mass number, *(MC-1)* 15
mass of a nucleon, *(MC-1)* 11
mass of an atom is concentrated in its nucleus., *(MC-1)* 11
matter consists of tiny particles?, *(MC-1)* 3
matter: solid (earth), liquid (water), and gas (air), *(MC-1)* 2, *(MC-1)* 49
MEANING OF FORMULA H2O, *(MC-1)* 81
meat, especially liver and kidney, also eggs, cocoa, chocolate, prunes, and some vegetables, such as spinach. , *(MC-1)* 155
Medium-length chains have a slightly larger molecular structure,, *(MC-1)* 169
menstruation and pregnancy., *(MC-1)* 156
METALLIC BOND, *(MC-1)* 19
metallic salts, *(MC-1)* 1
metalloids (elements possessing properties of both metals and nonmetals) lie on a diagonal line from boron to astatine; the rest are metals, *(MC-1)* 13
metals have a similar atomic structure in having only one electron in the outer shell, which gives each element a valency of one, *(MC-1)* 106
metals react strongly and, with the exception of lithium, explosively with acids to form salts and release hydrogen, *(MC-1)* 110
methemoglobin which is unable to transport oxygen. , *(MC-1)* 79
METHOD FOR DETERMINING EQUATIONS, *(MC-1)* 33
microcytic) and incompletely filled with hemoglobin (hypochromic), *(MC-1)* 158
milk contains extremely little iron, *(MC-1)* 155
milk of carnivorous animals contains sodium and potassium in equal amounts; the milk of herbivorous animals and of humans contains a higher proportion of potassium, their milk ash containing about 5% sodium and just over 20% potassium., *(MC-1)* 109
milk of herbivorous animals and of humans contains a higher proportion of potassium, their milk ash containing about 5% sodium and just over 20% potassium., *(MC-1)* 109
miner's safety lamp., *(MC-1)* 107
mineral acid with the characteristics described in Chapter 13, *(MC-1)* 122
mineral acids, *(MC-1)* 1
mitochondria (Fig. 8.5, *(MC-1)* 43
mitochondria that the actual combination of oxygen with sugar takes place. , *(MC-1)* 43
mmol" is short for millimole which means one-thousandth of a mole, *(MC-1)* 27
models pictured in Fig. 2.1., *(MC-1)* 4
molar. For example, a solution might be 0.5 molar, which is usually abbreviated to 0.5M. This means that it contains 0.5 moles of solute per liter., *(MC-1)* 27
mole of particles of some other substances are given in Table II., *(MC-1)* 24
mole quantities can easily be converted into grams if we know the formula weights of the substances, *(MC-1)* 32
mole, *(MC-1)* 24, *(MC-1)* 26
molecular formula of the substance, *(MC-1)* 5
Molecular formulas are used for molecular substances, *(MC-1)* 30
molecule. The shapes of a few molecules are illustrated by the models pictured in Fig. 2.1., *(MC-1)* 4
molecules , *(MC-1)* 21
molecules if the substance has a molecular structure and then the term "molecular weight" is usually used instead of "formula weight"., *(MC-1)* 25
molecules, *(MC-1)* 4
Molecules, as we have seen, are groups of definite numbers of atoms., *(MC-1)* 22
Molybdenum, *(MC-1)* 74
MONO-, DI- and TRI-PHOSPHATES, *(MC-1)* 147
movement of the air gases through the smallest airways and particularly through the walls of the

alveoli is largely due to the process called diffusion, *(MC-1)* 42
mucosal cells until needed (Fig. 19.1)., *(MC-1)* 156
Muscle contraction is a complex chemical reaction in which physical energy is released. This reaction can also be triggered off by direct application of the electric current to the muscle, *(MC-1)* 58
muscle, *(MC-1)* 52
muscular contraction., *((MC-1)* 75, *MC-1)* 139
muscular paralysis. , *(MC-1)* 58
musket wound., *(MC-1)* 122
myoglobin in the muscles, *(MC-1)* 156

Na2) attracts the slightly negative oxygen atoms of water molecules and each chlorine ion (Cl-), attracts the slightly positive hydrogen atoms, *(MC-1)* 83
NaCl has an osmolarity of , *(MC-1)* 111
NaCl is the empirical formula of sodium chloride., *(MC-1)* 22
NaClO, *(MC-1)* 122
NAD (nicotinamide-adenine dinucleotide, *(MC-1)* 75
NADH or NADPH, *(MC-1)* 75
negatively charged electrons orbit., *(MC-1)* 1
negatively charged polyethylene was attracted to the positively charged handkerchief, *(MC-1)* 9
neutral solution contains 10-7 moles of H3O+ per liter and therefore has a pH of 7., *(MC-1)* 88
neutron n 1 0, *(MC-1)* 10
neutron is, as its name suggests, electrically neutral, that is, uncharged. , *(MC-1)* 9
newborn infant has more hemoglobin than it requires., *(MC-1)* 156
NH4 and PH4 groupings can only exist in the form of ions as in ammonium chloride, NH4+Cl-, and phosphonium iodide, PH4+I-., *(MC-1)* 143
nickel, and zinc all have two electrons in their outer (4th or N) electron shell., *(MC-1)* 150
nicotinamide-adenine dinucleotide, *(MC-1)* 75
nitrates. , *(MC-1)* 145
nitrites and then into nitrates. , *(MC-1)* 145
Nitrogen (L. nitrum, a salt + L. genes, forming) is a colorless, odorless, and tasteless gas, that neither burns nor, in general, supports combustion. , *(MC-1)* 144
Nitrogen and phosphorus are group 5 elements, that is, they occur in group 5 of the periodic table, *(MC-1)* 142
nitrogen and phosphorus are important elements in medical chemistry, *(MC-1)* 142
Nitrogen appeared so inactive chemically that Lavoisier called it "azote" (without life)., *(MC-1)* 144
nitrogen boils off at -196∞C, *(MC-1)* 64
Nitrogen compounds provide food, fertilizers, poisons and explosives., *(MC-1)* 144
NITROGEN CYCLE, *(MC-1)* 145
nitrogen cycle, both by fixing nitrogen from the air and also by breaking down dead animal and vegetable matter, *(MC-1)* 147
nitrogen dioxide, *(MC-1)* 146
Nitrogen, like oxygen, is prepared commercially by fractional distillation of liquid air., *(MC-1)* 144
nitrogen-fixing bacteria. They convert the elemental nitrogen from the air into inorganic nitrogen-containing salts which can then be used by the plants., *(MC-1)* 147
Noble metals such as platinum and gold are resistant to oxidation by the atmosphere, *(MC-1)* 65
Nonmetals are found in the top right of the table, *(MC-1)* 13
normal saline" refers to physiologically normal saline., *(MC-1)* 110
normal salts, *(MC-1)* 91
Normal sodium chloride solution, in the sense used by chemists, contains the gram formula weight (58.5 g) in one liter of water, *(MC-1)* 110
nuclear energy (which we shall discuss in a later chapter) all energy on earth comes from the sun, *(MC-1)* 50
nuclear particle, whether it is a proton or a neutron, *(MC-1)* 10
nucleon refers to a nuclear particle, whether it is a proton or a neutron, *(MC-1)* 10
nucleus which contains the protons and neutrons, *(MC-1)* 10
number in a formula always refers to the symbol preceding it; the formula H2O tells us that a molecule of water consists of 2 hydrogen atoms and 1 oxygen atom, *(MC-1)* 5
number of nucleons, the total number of protons and neutrons, in an atom is called its mass number, *(MC-1)* 15
number of protons in the nucleus of an element, *(MC-1)* 11

O

odor of disinfectant can be detected some distance from the place where it is used, *(MC-1)* 3
opposite charges attract., *(MC-1)* 9
oral contraceptives which are known collectively as steroids, *(MC-1)* 173
organelles, small organs, within the cell which are characteristically sausage-shaped and incompletely divided by cristae into a series of communicating compartments, *(MC-1)* 43
organic chemical without the aid of the life force, *(MC-1)* 165
osmolarity is proportional to freezing point depression., *(MC-1)* 111
osmometer and it works by measuring the freezing point depression produced by a substance in water., *(MC-1)* 98
osmosis is not yet fully understood but this does not prevent us from understanding its practical implications., *(MC-1)* 95
osmosis, *(MC-1)* 95
osmotic effect., *(MC-1)* 97
OSMOTIC POULTICE, *(MC-1)* 100
osmotic pressure as the salts in the blood. , *(MC-1)* 98
osmotic pressure due to the plasma proteins in the capillary is insufficient to overcome this raised capillary pressure, *(MC-1)* 98
osmotic pressure is proportional to the number of molecules, *(MC-1)* 97
osmotic pressure only develops if the semipermeable membrane will not allow the dissolved salts to pass through., *(MC-1)* 97
osmotic pressure, *(MC-1)* 95
osteitis fibrosa cystica, *(MC-1)* 140
osteomalacea (adult rickets), *(MC-1)* 140
OXIDATION AND REDUCTION, *(MC-1)* 20
oxidation at the anode is, *(MC-1)* 58
OXIDATION OF BACTERIA, *(MC-1)* 66
oxidation, *(MC-1)* 21
oxidation, occurring at the anode, *(MC-1)* 56
oxidized by the fluorine which is called an, *(MC-1)* 21
oxidized to magnesium oxide since it loses electrons to oxygen., *(MC-1)* 39
oxidizing agent.,*(MC-1)* 21
oxy-acids:, *(MC-1)* 121
OXYGEN AND NITROGEN IN THE AIR, *(MC-1)* 46
oxygen can readily pass to enter the blood flowing through the numerous capillaries in the alveolar walls, *(MC-1)* 42
Oxygen comes off at the positive electrode (anode) and hydrogen at the negative electrode (cathode), *(MC-1)* 63
Oxygen composes 21% of the earth's atmosphere by volume (23% by weight), *(MC-1)* 61
oxygen contains 2 oxygen atoms, *(MC-1)* 6
oxygen deprivation, *(MC-1)* 60
OXYGEN FROM AIR, *(MC-1)* 64
oxygen from the air, *(MC-1)* 38
oxygen from the product of burning, *(MC-1)* 38
oxygen from the red powder left after mercury is burnt by heating the powder strongly, *(MC-1)* 38
OXYGEN FROM WATER,*(MC-1)* 62
OXYGEN IN THE HUMAN BODY, *(MC-1)* 41
oxygen is 8 and its electron configuration is 2, 6. , *(MC-1)* 60
Oxygen is a colorless, odorless and tasteless gas, *(MC-1)* 64
oxygen is stored at a very high pressure, 120 atmospheres, in steel cylinders., *(MC-1)* 61
Oxygen is therefore highly reactive and a powerful oxidizing agent, especially at the time of release from combination with another atom when it is momentarily in the atomic state., *(MC-1)* 61
oxygen tension, *(MC-1)* 42
oxygen which does not boil until the temperature reaches - 183∞C., *(MC-1)* 64

oxygen, which we take in when we breathe, reacts with the sugars and starches which the body gets from food. The products of these chemical reactions are carbon dioxide, water vapor and energy., *(MC-1)* 40
oxyhemoglobin in the red cells is carried by the circulation to the tissues where it readily dissociates into reduced hemoglobin and oxygen., *(MC-1)* 42
oxyhemoglobin, *(MC-1)* 42, *(MC-1)* 158

pacemaker and the spread of the impulse, producing the orderly wave of muscular contraction involving first the atria and then the ventricles, are all electrochemical phenomena., *(MC-1)* 58-59
pacemaker of specialized tissue in the right atrium called the, *(MC-1)* 58
Paracelsus (1493-1541), a rebel physician and alchemist, hotly criticized medical practice of his day and rounded a sect of medical chemists called Iatrochemists, who applied chemistry to the service of medicine, *(MC-1)* 1
paraffin, candle grease, and petrol. They must be distinguished from carbohydrates, *(MC-1)* 71
paraffins or alkanes which have the general formula CnH2n+2., *(MC-1)* 168
parathormone, as in a parathyroid tumor, causes excess mobilization of mineral from the bones, resulting in osteitis fibrosa cystica with weakening of the bones., *(MC-1)* 149
parathormone, mobilizes calcium from the bones thus increasing the blood level; it also facilitates the absorption of calcium from the small intestine., *(MC-1)* 140
Parathormone, the hormone secreted by the parathyroid glands, mobilizes calcium and phosphate ions from the bones, and promotes the excretion of phosphate in the urine., *(MC-1)* 148-149
parathyroid glands which are situated just behind and below the thyroid gland, *(MC-1)* 140
parchment may be used as a semipermeable membrane, *(MC-1)* 95
parenteral infusions it is usually heated in an autoclave at a pressure of 15 lb/in2 (1.05 kg/cm2) for 15 minutes (at 121°C). This is sufficient to kill all known organisms., *(MC-1)* 81
particles in a given weight of substance, *(MC-1)* 24
particles of over thirty different kinds, *(MC-1)* 4
particles, that is, one mole., *(MC-1)* 26
PBI level is 4-8 mg/100 cm3. It is raised when thyroid activity is excessive (hyperthyroidism) and reduced when it is deficient (hypothyroidism) as in cretinism and myxedema., *(MC-1)* 128
PBI, *(MC-1)* 128
pen is capable of electrical attractions we say that it is electrically charged or that it carries electrical charges, *(MC-1)* 7
peptic ulcer, *(MC-1)* 89
perchlorates NaClO4, *(MC-1)* 122
perchloric acid HClO4, *(MC-1)* 122
periodic table is one of the most important classifications in science, *(MC-1)* 13
PERIODIC TABLE OF THE ELEMENTS, *(MC-1)* 12
peritoneal dialysis" in which a saline solution is passed constantly through the peritoneal cavity., *(MC-1)* 105
Permanent hardness is due to the presence of calcium or magnesium sulfate in the water. It is resistant to boiling., *(MC-1)* 78
permanent hardness, *(MC-1)* 77
permeable for all but the larger molecules, such as plasma proteins, to pass through., *(MC-1)* 105
petrol. They must be distinguished from carbohydrates, *(MC-1)* 71
pH METER, *(MC-1)* 88
pH of 1 contains 10-1 or-1/10 moles of H_3O+ per liter., *(MC-1)* 88
pH of the blood is maintained within very narrow limits, *(MC-1)* 149
pH, *(MC-1)* 89
phosgene., *(MC-1)* 124
phosphatase plays an important part in this calcification process., *(MC-1)* 148
Phosphate buffers provide an important mechanism for maintaining this constancy of the pH, *(MC-1)* 149
phosphate rock is an important source of the element., *(MC-1)* 147
Phosphates are intimately involved in the calcification of bones and teeth whose rigidity is essentially due to impregnation of the organic collagen matrix by hydroxy-apatite, Ca(OH)2•3Ca3(PO4)2., *(MC-1)* 148
phosphine, PH3 illustrate this tervalency of nitrogen and phosphorus., *(MC-1)* 142

phospho-proteins (especially in the brain), *(MC-1)* 149
phospholipids (in every cell in the body), *(MC-1)* 149
phosphonium iodide, PH4+I-., *(MC-1)* 143
Phosphonium ion, PH4+., *(MC-1)* 143
phosphoric acid are used to make super-phosphate fertilizers, *(MC-1)* 147
phosphorus in flour is mainly unavailable due to the presence of phytic acid which interferes with the absorption of phosphates, calcium and iron., *(MC-1)* 148
PHOSPHORUS IN THE BODY, *(MC-1)* 148
Phosphorus is excreted mainly by the kidneys, *(MC-1)* 148
phosphorus requirement for an adult is approximately 1 g (32 mmol) daily., *(MC-1)* 148
Phosphorus was discovered by Brand in 1669 who prepared it from urine, *(MC-1)* 147
photography. Light falls on a photographic film and changes a little silver bromide in the film into silver. The amount of silver formed is proportional to the amount of light falling on the film. Thus, we obtain a silver "image" of the subject photographed., *(MC-1)* 9-50
photosynthesis (Gr. photo, light, +Gr. synthesis, building up), *(MC-1)* 47
PHOTOSYNTHESIS, *(MC-1)* 47
Physiologically normal saline is extensively used for the cleansing of wounds, *(MC-1)* 111
phytic acid which interferes with calcium absorption. In order to absorb calcium it is vital to have adequate vitamin D in the diet., *(MC-1)* 139
phytic acid which interferes with the absorption of phosphates, calcium and iron., *(MC-1)* 148
Plant proteins are eaten by animals, including humans, and converted into the particular proteins which the animal requires, *(MC-1)* 145
plants can only use nitrogen if it is provided for them in the form of inorganic salts, namely, nitrates (salts of nitric acid, HNO3), nitrites (salts of nitrous acid, HNO2) and ammonium compounds., *(MC-1)* 146
Plants make their proteins from nitrates in the soil. These nitrates are partly replenished by the following cycle of events, known as the "nitrogen cycle., *(MC-1)* 145
plants potassium occurs as salts of organic acids, for example oxalates in sorrel and rhubarb., *(MC-1)* 108
plants which are able to use nitrogen from the air. These are the leguminosae, which include peas, beans, vetches. On the roots of these plants little nodules can be seen (Fig. 18.1)., *(MC-1)* 146
Plasma contains dihydrogen phosphate ions, H2PO4- and the less acid monohydrogen phosphate ions, HPO42- in the ratio of about 1:5., *(MC-1)* 149
plasma protein (especially the albumin) is reduced, as in nephritis or protein starvation, the osmotic pressure is correspondingly reduced until eventually it is insufficient for fluid to pass back into the capillary from the tissue spaces, *(MC-1)* 97
plasma proteins have large molecules and, except in inflammation, they cannot traverse the capillary walls,*(MC-1)* 97
plasma proteins which have the most osmotic effect in relation to the tissue fluid., *(MC-1)* 97
plasma proteins, *(MC-1)* 102
Plaster of Paris is a form of calcium sulfate known as the hemihydrate 2CaSO4.H2O , *(MC-1)* 139
plaster of Paris is mixed with water it rapidly sets and hardens., *(MC-1)* 139
poison gas In the I914-1918 war causing great disability and loss of life, *(MC-1)* 118
poisonous alkali, *(MC-1)* 114-115
poisons and explosives., *(MC-1)* 144
polyethylene both carried a charge and they repelled each other. Therefore, negative charges repel one another, *(MC-1)* 9
polyethylene is negative, and that on the rubbed handkerchief is positive., *(MC-1)* 9
polyethylene was attracted to the positively charged handkerchief, *(MC-1)* 9
porcelain, pottery, tiles, and enamel. If a solution of cobalt(II) chloride, CoCl2•6H2O is used as

ink, the very faint pink is invisible. , *(MC-1)* 159
pores in a bacteriological filter are so small that considerable pressure is required to force the fluid through., *(MC-1)* 101
positively charged nucleus around which negatively charged electrons orbit., *(MC-1)* 1
potash felspar (potassium aluminum silicate), *(MC-1)* 108
potash solution is used in biology for dissolving dead flesh away from the bone, *(MC-1)* 115
potassium aluminum silicate), *(MC-1)* 108
Potassium chloride is a white crystalline powder resembling common salt and having a similar saline taste, *(MC-1)* 112
Potassium chloride is sometimes given intravenously, well diluted in physiologically normal saline or 5% dextrose. If injected too rapidly it can depress the heart's action or even cause cardiac arrest by "potassium inhibition.", *(MC-1)* 113
potassium combine readily with oxygen, *(MC-1)* 65
Potassium combines even more readily than sodium with chlorine, oxygen, and sulfur; lithium combines rather less readily, *(MC-1)* 110
potassium deficiency develops and the patient may die from hypokalemia , *(MC-1)* 116
potassium depletion include muscular weakness, lethargy and increased sensitivity of the heart to digoxin. Severe depletion can cause death., *(MC-1)* 116
Potassium depletion may be due to diarrhea and vomiting, *(MC-1)* 116
potassium depletion. Its USP category is "electrolyte replenisher, *(MC-1)* 112
potassium ferricyanide) is ruby red and owes its color to the complex hexacyanoferrate(III) (ferricyanide) ion, Fe(CN)63- , *(MC-1)* 151
potassium hexacyanoferrate(III) (potassium ferricyanide) is ruby red and owes its color to the complex hexacyanoferrate(III) (ferricyanide) ion, Fe(CN)63- , *(MC-1)* 151
Potassium hydroxide, sometimes known as caustic potash, has properties very similar to sodium hydroxide and, like it, is a powerful and poisonous alkali, *(MC-1)* 114-115
POTASSIUM in BLOOD, *(MC-1)* 117
potassium in the body 98% is situated intracellularly, the concentration being highest in the cells of the brain, *(MC-1)* 115
potassium inhibition.", *(MC-1)* 113
potassium iodide is also used as an expectorant, to thin down the bronchial mucus in cases of asthma and bronchitis. Its USP category is "expectorant.", *(MC-1)* 113
Potassium iodide occurs as slightly opaque crystals or as a white crystalline powder, *(MC-1)* 113
potassium ion, K+ predominates in the intracellular fluid. , *(MC-1)* 115
potassium ions K-., *(MC-1)* 106
potassium permanganate are purple prisms which dissolve in water to give a purple solution., *(MC-1)* 153
Potassium permanganate is a powerful oxidizing agent and as such is an effective antiseptic, *(MC-1)* 153
potassium placed on water reacts even more vigorously than sodium and the hydrogen ignites spontaneously., *(MC-1)* 109
Potassium predominates in the intracellular fluid. , *(MC-1)* 108
potassium the structural factors promoting reactivity are even more pronounced, *(MC-1)* 107
Potassium was the first of the alkali metals to be discovered, by Humphry Davy, in England in 1807, *(MC-1)* 107
pregnancy., *(MC-1)* 156
pressure is still sufficient not only to prevent osmotic flow into the capillary but actually to cause fluid to pass out through the capillary wall into the tissue spaces, *(MC-1)* 97
pressure within the glomerular capillaries is sufficient to force through this double-layered filter the fluid component of the blood including all the substances dissolved in it except those with large molecules like the plasma proteins, *(MC-1)* 102
Priestley produced the gas by heating red oxide of mercury, using a magnifying ("burning") glass to focus the sun's rays, *(MC-1)* 61

Priestley, an English nonconformist preacher, who was the first to publish his discovery by several years. ,*(MC-1)* 61
properties are very alike, *(MC-1)* 12
properties of a substance are largely determined by the bonds between its atoms and by the way the atoms are arranged., *(MC-1)* 5
PROPERTIES OF WATER, *(MC-1)* 81
PROTEIN BOUND IODINE, PBI, *(MC-1)* 128
proton p 1 +1, *(MC-1)* 10
proton donor, that is, a weak acid. , *(MC-1)* 86
proton is positively charged, *(MC-1)* 9
protonated water molecule, *(MC-1)* 86
prunes, and some vegetables, such as spinach. , *(MC-1)* 155
purple solution., *(MC-1)* 153

Quick-lime is calcium oxide, CaO, *(MC-1)* 137

R

Radio-iodine has a number of medical applications. The isotope most frequently used is 131I which has a half-life of just over eight days., *(MC-1)* 129
Radio-iodine has also been used for the detection of deposits of thyroid cancer outside the thyroid gland and, occasionally, for the treatment of thyrotoxicosis and of thyroid cancer, *(MC-1)* 130
radio-iodine include the estimation of Thyroxine T4 and of T3 uptake, *(MC-1)* 129
Radio-iodine is a radioactive isotope of iodine, *(MC-1)* 129
radio-iodine test of thyroid activity in which the patient, after fasting for at least two hours, is given a measured dose of radio-iodine to drink; urine is collected at timed intervals over the next 48 hours. , *(MC-1)* 129
radio-iodine to drink; urine is collected at timed intervals over the next 48 hours. , *(MC-1)* 129
radioactive isotope of iodine, *(MC-1)* 129
radioactive., *(MC-1)* 13
Radium (Ra), *(MC-1)* 131
rainwater to form nitric acid, *(MC-1)* 146
rare gases (helium, neon, argon, krypton, xenon, and radon) show very little tendency to form bonds; they are very unreactive., *(MC-1)* 16
reabsorbed in the kidney tubules. This reabsorption is controlled by steroid hormones from the adrenal cortex, especially aldosterone., *(MC-1)* 115
REACTION WITH ACIDS, *(MC-1)* 110
REACTION WITH OTHER ELEMENTS, *(MC-1)* 110
reaction, *(MC-1)* 88
red blood cells are introduced into a 2% saline solution, a salt concentration significantly higher than that existing inside the cells, the opposite happens, *(MC-1)* 95
red blood cells are put into plain water they immediately burst. , *(MC-1)* 95
Red blood cells neither shrink nor burst when placed in isotonic saline., *(MC-1)* 98
red cell envelope is the semipermeable membrane, *(MC-1)* 95
red color, *(MC-1)* 3
red litmus blue and neutralize acids; that is, convert hydroxonium ions into water, *(MC-1)* 88
red oxyhemoglobin, *(MC-1)* 42
Red phosphorus is used in the manufacture of safety matches, fireworks, incendiary shells, smoke bombs, tracer bullets, pesticides, and phosphoric acid, H3PO4., *(MC-1)* 147
red phosphorus, *(MC-1)* 147
redox reaction, as indeed are all voltaic cell reactions, *(MC-1)* 51
redox reactions. A reaction which involves the loss of electrons is called, *(MC-1)* 21
reduced by sodium in the first reaction and by hydrogen in the second, *(MC-1)* 21
reduced hemoglobin and is blue in color, *(MC-1)* 42
reducing agent because it partially loses its electrons to other elements, namely oxygen, chlorine, nitrogen, and carbon., *(MC-1)* 74
reducing agents in these reactions., *(MC-1)* 21
reduction at the cathode is , *(MC-1)* 57
reduction, *(MC-1)* 21
reduction, occurring at the cathode, *(MC-1)* 56
reduction-oxidation reactions, usually abbreviated to redox reactions.,*(MC-1)* 21
REMOVAL OF CARBON DIOXIDE FROM THE HUMAN BODY, *(MC-1)* 45
renal acidosis, *(MC-1)* 89
renal alkalosis, *(MC-1)* 89
renal glomeruli of which there are about a million in each kidney. , *(MC-1)* 101
respiration is continually producing more carbon dioxide there is a relatively high concentration of carbonic acid., *(MC-1)* 6
respiration only a small part of the energy is released as heat, the greater part being stored in energy-rich compounds that release energy when it is required for the various forms of cellular activity., *(MC-1)* 36

respiration, *(MC-1)* 36, *(MC-1)* 46
RESPIRATION, *(MC-1)* 36, *(MC-1)* 39
respiration, both by animals and plants, *(MC-1)* 166
respiratory acidosis, *(MC-1)* 89
respiratory alkalosis, *(MC-1)* 89
respiratory center is stimulated so that more carbon dioxide is expelled, resulting in a lowering of the carbonic acid concentration in the blood and a corresponding rise in pH (that is, an increase in alkalinity). , *(MC-1)* 89
respiratory chain. These steps involve a series of enzymes such as flavoproteins and cytochromes situated in the mitochondria., *(MC-1)* 75
respiratory failure when the lungs fail to expel carbon dioxide, CO2 rapidly enough to prevent the carbonic acid, H2CO3 level in the blood from rising, *(MC-1)* 89
resting muscle, *(MC-1)* 52
reverse reaction., *(MC-1)* 34
REVERSIBLE REACTIONS, *(MC-1)* 34
rickets due to vitamin D deficiency in the diet and osteomalacia due to poor intestinal absorption of vitamin D, the serum calcium and phosphate are both low, *(MC-1)* 149
rickets, *(MC-1)* 140
rigor, *(MC-1)* 139
Ringer-Locke's solution is similarly "isotonic", *(MC-1)* 98
rings contain carbon atoms only, the compounds are said to be homocyclic., *(MC-1)* 174
Rings show a cyclic arrangement of carbon atoms, *(MC-1)* 171
Rings that contain other atoms as well as carbon are of considerable biological importance, *(MC-1)* 173
Robert Boyle (1627-1691) has been called the father of modern chemistry, *(MC-1)* 1
roman numeral refers to the valence of iron) is, *(MC-1)* 30
roman numerals indicating the valence. , *(MC-1)* 153
rubbed pen with your hand and see if it will still pick up bits of paper, etc,*(MC-1)* 7

S

safety matches, fireworks, incendiary shells, smoke bombs, tracer bullets, pesticides, and phosphoric acid, H3PO4., *(MC-1)* 147
saline concentration increases, the osmolarity becomes larger., *(MC-1)* 112
saline of this strength has a powerful osmotic effect in removing excess fluid from tissues, *(MC-1)* 112
saline purgative is magnesium sulfate (MgSO4 , *(MC-1)* 99
SALINE PURGATIVES, *(MC-1)* 99
saline solution which is isotonic with human and animal tissues., *(MC-1)* 110
saline., *(MC-1)* 110
salt does not necessarily give an acidic solution., *(MC-1)* 91
salt present in greatest amount, both in our body fluid and in the sea, is sodium chloride NaCl or common salt.,*(MC-1)* 85
salt solution by mouth is an emetic (causes vomiting). It acts by irritating the stomach. Like other emetics it should not be used in the treatment of poisoning by substances such as acids, which can damage and weaken the stomach wall, because of the danger of perforation., *(MC-1)* 112
salts dissolved in our body water are as essential to life as the water itself, *(MC-1)* 85
salts, *(MC-1)* 91
Scheele, a poor Swedish apothecary, *(MC-1)* 61
scientific method, every theory being put to the test of carefully planned experiment., *(MC-1)* 2
selective reabsorption of those chemicals required by the body is an active process carried out by the renal tubule cells and involves work against osmotic pressure, *(MC-1)* 103
semipermeable membrane, *(MC-1)* 95
serum (or plasma) electrolytes. , *(MC-1)* 91
sex hormone, *(MC-1)* 173
shape of a molecule often plays an important part in its biological activity, *(MC-1)* 127
SHAPE OF A WATER MOLECULE, *(MC-1)* 82
shared pair of electrons (shown ringed like this , *(MC-1)* 18
shell structure 2, 8, 18, 5, 13
shellfish, is also calcium carbonate., *(MC-1)* 136
shells are numbered 1 to 7 or lettered K to Q outwards from the nucleus., *(MC-1)* 11
shells or energy levels, *(MC-1)* 11
Short chains, *(MC-1)* 167
SI Units, *(MC-1)* 28
silvery liquids, *(MC-1)* 109
single covalent bond, *(MC-1)* 18
sino-auricular, S-A node (Fig. 9.5). , *(MC-1)* 58
skin disinfectants., *(MC-1)* 126
skin in heat exhaustion also involves a severe loss of salts, *(MC-1)* 85
Slaked lime is calcium hydroxide Ca(OH)2. , *(MC-1)* 138
smelting, consists essentially of the reduction of iron oxides, such as magnetite, Fe3O4 and hematite, Fe2O3, or iron(II) carbonate (ferrous carbonate) such as siderite, FeCO3 to metallic iron in varying degrees of purity., *(MC-1)* 153
smoke bombs, tracer bullets, pesticides, and phosphoric acid, H3PO4., *(MC-1)* 147
soap is needed, a better lather is obtained and no scum (calcium or magnesium stearate) is produced., *(MC-1)* 78
Soap is sodium stearate, represented for simplicity as Na"St"., *(MC-1)* 77
soap which contains the negative stearate ion, *(MC-1)* 169
sodium and chloride is reabsorbed and normally all the glucose, is reabsorbed, *(MC-1)* 103
Sodium and potassium are soft, silvery white metals, sufficiently light to float on water, *(MC-1)* 109
Sodium and potassium are the most common elements in the chemical group known as the alkali metals., *(MC-1)* 106

Sodium and potassium are thus powerful reducing agents; each atom readily donating an electron and becoming converted into sodium and potassium ions in the process., *(MC-1)* 110
sodium and potassium as key elements in the normal body chemistry., *(MC-1)* 106
sodium and potassium combine readily with oxygen, *(MC-1)* 65
Sodium and potassium have the arrangements, *(MC-1)* 12
SODIUM and POTASSIUM in BLOOD, *(MC-1)* 117
sodium are not composed of molecules but of positive and negative ions, attracted toward each other by their opposite charges., *(MC-1)* 107
sodium atom is very unstable, that is, very reactive, *(MC-1)* 106
sodium atom loses an electron to the chlorine atom, resulting in the formation of a positive sodium ion Na+ and a negative chlorine ion Cl-. , *(MC-1)* 17
sodium bicarbonate solution is used in the treatment of acidosis as for diabetic coma. Its USP category is "antacid.", *(MC-1)* 114
Sodium bicarbonate, also called bicarbonate of soda, occurs either as small opaque crystals or as a white powder. It is odorless but has a salty taste. It is one of the more commonly used gastric antacids but has the disadvantage that it liberates carbon dioxide in the stomach., *(MC-1)* 113
sodium carbonate in the blood stream., *(MC-1)* 45
sodium chloride (Fig. 5.3)., *(MC-1)* 22
Sodium chloride can be highly toxic or even fatal in large doses as when given to infants mistakenly as sugar, *(MC-1)* 112
Sodium chloride consists of positive sodium ions and negative chlorine ions, *(MC-1)* 9
sodium chloride in water is referred to simply as saline., *(MC-1)* 110
Sodium chloride occurs either as colorless crystals or in the form of a white crystalline powder as in table salt. , *(MC-1)* 110
SODIUM CHLORIDE SOLUTION, *(MC-1)* 56
sodium chloride which have been "enteric coated" to prevent digestion in the stomach are given by mouth in the treatment of salt loss, for example for heat exhaustion in the tropics., *(MC-1)* 112
sodium chloride) is decomposed by electricity into sodium and chlorine. Water and sodium chloride are called compounds., *(MC-1)* 4
SODIUM CHLORIDE, *(MC-1)* 54
Sodium chloride-ionic giant structure, *(MC-1)* 23
Sodium hydride is an ionic compound Na+ H-., *(MC-1)* 74
sodium hydroxide is a "pharmaceutic aid (alkalizing agent).", *(MC-1)* 114
Sodium hydroxide is an ionic compound. It readily dissolves in water producing a solution of sodium and hydroxyl (OH-) ions., *(MC-1)* 114
Sodium hypochlorite is a powerful oxidizing agent. In its pure form it is extremely unstable, readily releasing oxygen and chlorine. Its powerful oxidizing activity makes it an effective bleaching agent and antiseptic., *(MC-1)* 123-124
sodium hypochlorite, NaClO., *(MC-1)* 123
sodium in the urine is adjusted very closely to the body's needs., *(MC-1)* 115
Sodium iodide is a white crystalline powder with a slightly bitter saline taste, *(MC-1)* 113
sodium ion has a net charge of +1 and the chlorine ion a net charge of -1. , *(MC-1)* 17
sodium ion, Na+ is the most abundant cation in the extracellular fluid, *(MC-1)* 115
sodium ions "carry" the water molecules to the cathode and the chlorine ions "carry" them to the anode., *(MC-1)* 56
sodium ions Na+ and potassium ions K-., *(MC-1)* 106
sodium is formed., *(MC-1)* 54
Sodium is present in very much the higher concentration in the extra-cellular fluids including blood, *(MC-1)* 108
sodium is reabsorbed in the kidney tubules. This reabsorption is controlled by steroid hormones

from the adrenal cortex, especially aldosterone., *(MC-1)* 115
Sodium is the commonest of the alkali metals and potassium the next most common., *(MC-1)* 108
Sodium is the sixth and potassium the seventh most abundant element on earth, each constituting about 2.5% of the earth's crust, *(MC-1)* 108
sodium provided by the bony skeleton. Approximately one-third of the body sodium is in skeletal bone and can be rapidly mobilized when required., *(MC-1)* 115
sodium than potassium is converted into soluble carbonate, *(MC-1)* 108
sodium, chlorine, and hydrogen all have a valence of 1 and are said to be univalent., *(MC-1)* 17
soft water can dissolve lead from lead pipes and contribute to slowly cumulative lead poisoning., *(MC-1)* 79
soft water for washing are that less soap is needed, a better lather is obtained and no scum (calcium or magnesium stearate) is produced., *(MC-1)* 78
softening ingredient,*(MC-1)* 78
Soil bacteria thus play a vital part in the nitrogen cycle, both by fixing nitrogen from the air and also by breaking down dead animal and vegetable matter, *(MC-1)* 147
solid (s), *(MC-1)* 32
soluble carbonate, *(MC-1)* 108
Solute is the name given to the dissolved substance., *(MC-1)* 27
Solvent (water in the case of cells) is always transferred from the weaker to the more concentrated solution, unless of course we apply sufficient pressure to counteract the osmotic pressure, *(MC-1)* 95
solvent, usually water, *(MC-1)* 86
solvent., *(MC-1)* 87
spinach. , *(MC-1)* 155
spore-bearing organisms may, however, survive in tap water, *(MC-1)* 80-81
stainless steel (iron, carbon, chromium and sometimes nickel and cobalt, *(MC-1)* 151
starvation., *(MC-1)* 93
steam engine works only if it receives heat from burning fuel. , *(MC-1)* 49
stearate ion, *(MC-1)* 169
steel cylinders., *(MC-1)* 61
STERILE WATER, *(MC-1)* 80
steroids)., *(MC-1)* 93, *(MC-1)* 173
stomach could digest a living frog's leg., *(MC-1)* 122
stomach opening on to the abdominal wall caused accidently by a musket wound., *(MC-1)* 122
stomach wall., *(MC-1)* 133
STP. stands for standard temperature and pressure which are 0°C and 760 mm of mercury pressure, *(MC-1)* 67
strips of polyethylene, each about 12 inches x 1 inch, from a polyethylene bag or sheet. Place them on a flat surface and electrically charge them by stroking them a few times with your handkerchief, *(MC-1)* 8
strong electrolytes,*(MC-1)* 54
strontium (including radio-active strontium) and lead can readily be laid down in bone., *(MC-1)* 141
Strontium (Sr) , *(MC-1)* 131
structure, we mean the arrangement of the minute particles of which a substance is composed., *(MC-1)* 3
subatomic particles, the proton, the electron and the neutron, from which atoms are built., *(MC-1)* 9
sugar (glucose) has been oxidized in the cell, carbon dioxide and water are formed., *(MC-1)* 45
sulfate., *(MC-1)* 90
sulfates, *(MC-1)* 90
Sulfur burns in oxygen with a blue flame, *(MC-1)* 66
Sulfuric, hydrochloric and nitric acids are strong proton donors and are therefore said to be strong

acids. , *(MC-1)* 86
sun consists mainly of hydrogen and every second 4 million tons of it are converted directly into energy, *(MC-1)* 70
sun worshippers; perhaps they had more insight into life processes than we give them credit for., *(MC-1)* 50
sun, *(MC-1)* 50
Sunlight is converted into chemical energy in green plants, the chemical energy being stored in the sugars and starches which are photosynthesized. , *(MC-1)* 50
sunlight is trapped by the chlorophyll in green plants on earth, providing the energy for all the other living creatures including ourselves, which feed directly or indirectly on green plants, *(MC-1)* 70
Swedish apothecary, *(MC-1)* 61
swelling), *(MC-1)* 97
symbol "•" represents an electron in the hydrogen atom and the symbol "x" an electron in the chlorine atom, *(MC-1)* 18
symbol of an element can represent either one atom or one gram-atom of it., *(MC-1)* 26
Systeme International d'Unites)., *(MC-1)* 28

T3 has four times the biological activity of T4., *(MC-1)* 129
T3 TRI-IODOTHYRONINE ESTIMATION, *(MC-1)* 129
T3 TRI-IODOTHYRONINE UPTAKE, *(MC-1)* 128
T4 can be affected by various influences such as by pregnancy and the contraceptive pill., *(MC-1)* 128
T4 is bound to serum proteins which have limited number of binding sites on them., *(MC-1)* 128
T4 to T3 in blood is 50:1, *(MC-1)* 129
Table II, *(MC-1)* 24 TABLE II. Weights of Moles
Table III, *(MC-1)* 29 TABLE III. SI UNITS
Table IV, *(MC-1)* 92 Normal and acid salts
talc, asbestos and other minerals, *(MC-1)* 134
tartaric acid from grapes, *(MC-1)* 165
teeth from decay., *(MC-1)* 120
Temperature (fire) is a major controlling factor; heat converts ice (solid) into water (liquid) and then into steam (gas)., *(MC-1)* 2
temperature of the body virtually constant at 37°C, the temperature at which the body functions best., *(MC-1)* 40
Temporary hardness is due to the presence of calcium or magnesium bicarbonate in the water. If the water is boiled the bicarbonate breaks down., *(MC-1)* 77
temporary hardness, *(MC-1)* 77
tension, *(MC-1)* 42
thyrocalcitonin) that is secreted by the thyroid gland. The effect of this is the opposite of parathormone in that it promotes the deposition of calcium in the bones from the blood. *(MC-1)* , 140
thyroid cancer, *(MC-1)* 130
thyroid hormone, *(MC-1)* 126
thyroid hormone, called T3 or tri-iodothyronine, has a very similar structure but contains only three atoms of iodine., *(MC-1)* 127
thyroid scan to study thyroid activity, also prior to operation for removal of thyroid gland tissue in cases of thyrotoxicosis., *(MC-1)* 113
thyroid secretion (hyperthyroidism or thyrotoxicosis) causes the rate of metabolism (chemical reactions in cells) to be excessive., *(MC-1)* 127
thyrotoxicosis and of thyroid cancer, *(MC-1)* 130
thyrotoxicosis more iodine than usual is taken up by the thyroid so that the amount excreted in the urine is reduced., *(MC-1)* 129
thyroxine index provides a measure of the actual biological activity of thyroxine T4,, *(MC-1)* 129
thyroxine is 50 to 140 mmol/liter (4 to 11 mg/100 cm3)., *(MC-1)* 128
Thyroxine T4 (Tetra-iodothyronine) accounts for 90% of the protein bound iodine but its estimation is much less liable to be affected by iodine contamination., *(MC-1)* 128
thyroxine T4 (tetra-iodothyronine) contains four atoms of iodine., *(MC-1)* 126
Thyroxine T4 and of T3 uptake, *(MC-1)* 129
thyroxine T4 and T3 have marked biological activity., *(MC-1)* 127
tin), *(MC-1)* 151
TISSUE ELECTROLYTES, *(MC-1)* 94
tissue fluid. , *(MC-1)* 76
titration,, *(MC-1)* 34
TONICITY, *(MC-1)* 98
toxic to the lower organisms but much less so to the higher ones., *(MC-1)* 162
toxicity of iron(II) sulfate is largely due to the fact that it is ionized into Fe2+ and SO42- and being soluble gives a high concentration of iron(II) ions. , *(MC-1)* 154
transistors., *(MC-1)* 145
transmute base materials into gold, *(MC-1)* 1
TRI-PHOSPHATES, *(MC-1)* 147

triple bond because they share three pairs of electrons., *(MC-1)* 19
tritium = 1 electron + 1 proton + 2 neutrons, *(MC-1)* 68
Tritium is three times as heavy as hydrogen, *(MC-1)* 70
tubes are sufficiently permeable for all but the larger molecules, such as plasma proteins, to pass through., *(MC-1)* 105
tungsten are manufactured in this way., *(MC-1)* 74
typhoid or cholera type., *(MC-1)* 80
tyrosinase. , *(MC-1)*

urea "without requiring a kidney, or an animal, either man or dog, *(MC-1)* 165
urea from human urine, *(MC-1)* 165
uric acid from urine, *(MC-1)* 165
urine if there is a tendency to acidosis and a more alkaline urine if there is a tendency to alkalosis., *(MC-1)* 89

V

valence of an element in such a compound is given by the number of bonds it forms, so that hydrogen and chlorine are again seen to be univalent as they are in ionic compounds., *(MC-1)* 18
valence of an element is the number of charges carried by each of its ions., *(MC-1)* 17
valence shell of oxygen is relatively close to the nucleus, shielded from it only by the inner shell of 2 electrons, *(MC-1)* 61
valence shells, *(MC-1)* 12
VALENCE, *(MC-1)* 151
valences of calcium and sodium are determined by the number of electrons in their outer shell, *(MC-1)* 17
valences of hydrogen and chlorine are determined by the number of electrons needed to complete their outer shell., *(MC-1)* 17
Van Helmont (1577-1644) represents the transition from medieval alchemy to modern chemistry., *(MC-1)* 1
venous blood its bluish color. , *(MC-1)* 43
ventricular fibrillation, a rapid uncoordinated and ineffectual contraction of the ventricular muscle. , *(MC-1)* 58
Vitamin B12 (cyanocobalamine) is a very complex molecule with cobalt at its center, *(MC-1)* 159
Vitamin B12 is an essential enzyme in the complicated nucleotide syntheses involved in the formation of new cells, *(MC-1)* 160
vitamin B12 is required by the nervous system and without it, degenerative changes may occur (subacute combined degeneration of the cord) with progressive paralysis, loss of sensation, mental deterioration and even dementia., *(MC-1)* 160
vitamin B12 is stored in the liver and utilized by the tissues, especially the bone marrow. , *(MC-1)* 159
vitamin D in the diet is required to promote the absorption of calcium from the gut together with the maintenance in the blood of normal calcium and phosphate levels., *(MC-1)* 149
voltaic cell , *(MC-1)* 50
voltaic cells. The car, flashlight, and hearing-aid batteries are common examples, *(MC-1)* 50
vomiting, *(MC-1)* 116

walls of our blood capillaries only partially prevent the salts (electrolytes) in the blood from diffusing out into the tissue spaces., *(MC-1)* 97
waste materials filtered through the blood by the kidney are described in the section on waste materials in Chapter 29 and the one on urine in Chapter 30., *(MC-1)* 103
water at 100°C and its freezing point at O°C, at 1 atmosphere pressure, *(MC-1)* 81
Water containing nitrates is generally unsuitable for drinking, *(MC-1)* 79
water gas., *(MC-1)* 73
Water is a powerful solvent, particularly for acids, bases and salts, *(MC-1)* 81
water is an odorless, tasteless liquid., *(MC-1)* 81
Water is an unusual liquid in having its maximum density at a temperature 4°C higher than its freezing point., *(MC-1)* 81
water is made soft, *(MC-1)* 78
Water is not an element because if we pass an electric current through it we split it up into hydrogen and oxygen, *(MC-1)* 4
Water is one of the commonest chemical substances in the world. It is essential for all forms of life on this planet and comprises about 70% of our body weight. , *(MC-1)* 76
water is reabsorbed., *(MC-1)* 103
water molecules, *(MC-1)* 83
water molecules, being neutral, are not attracted to the positive and negative electrodes. We have to wait for their random motion to take them there., *(MC-1)* 56
water of crystallization" as MgSO4•7H2O as in crystals of Epsom salts., *(MC-1)* 135
water palatable., *(MC-1)* 79
Water reabsorption is controlled by the antidiuretic hormone of the posterior pituitary gland; the more hormone that is secreted, the more water is reabsorbed., *(MC-1)* 103
water that are passed through the glomeruli every day, all but 1.5 liters are reabsorbed by the kidney tubules, *(MC-1)* 103
water vapor produced when we breathe?, *(MC-1)* 40
water's properties fit in with a formula of H2O?, *(MC-1)* 81
waterlogging of the tissues, *(MC-1)* 93
weak acid, *(MC-1)* 77, *(MC-1)* 86
weak electrolytes, *(MC-1)* 54
WEIGHT OF A SUBSTANCE, *(MC-1)* 24
WEIGHT OF AN ELEMENT, *(MC-1)* 24
weights as indicated by the formula, *(MC-1)* 25
White phosphorus is phosphorescent. If exposed to sunlight or when heated in its own vapor it is converted to red phosphorus, *(MC-1)* 147
Wilson's disease, a metabolic defect involving copper in which the brain and liver are affected and large amounts of copper are excreted in the urine (over 20/mmol (1.3 mg)/24 hr)., *(MC-1)* 162
Wood ash contains about 30% potassium carbonate, *(MC-1)* 108

X ray and T.V. screens, fluorescent lights and luminous dials., *(MC-1)* 163

yellow flame characteristic of sodium, *(MC-1)* 109

Zinc (Ger. zink, unknown) is a bluish-white lustrous metal, brittle at ordinary temperatures but malleable at 100°C to 150°C., *(MC-1)* 163
zinc all have two electrons in their outer (4th or N) electron shell., *(MC-1)* 150
Zinc carbonate is a white powder. It is one of the main constituents of calamine, which also contains zinc oxide, iron(III) oxide (giving it a pink color] and phenol (skin anesthetic and antiseptic)., *(MC-1)* 164
zinc has a fixed valence of two., *(MC-1)* 163
ZINC IN THE BODY, *(MC-1)* 164
Zinc is resistant to atmospheric corrosion, *(MC-1)* 163
Zinc oxide is an insoluble white powder., *(MC-1)* 163
Zinc oxide is used in the manufacture of pharmaceuticals, cosmetics, paints, rubber products, floor coverings, plastics, printing ink, soap, textiles, and electrical equipment., *(MC-1)* 163
zinc oxide ointment, used for skin application as a soothing cream., *(MC-1)* 163
Zinc oxide, however, is the compound with the widest applications., *(MC-1)* 163
zinc sulfate and is used as an astringent surface antiseptic, for example, in the treatment of indolent ulcers to promote healing., *(MC-1)* 164
Zinc sulphide is used for X ray and T.V. screens, fluorescent lights and luminous dials., *(MC-1)* 163
zinc, *(MC-1)* 150

1 or K 2 , *(MC-1)* 11
2 or L 8, *(MC-1)* 11
3 or M 18, *(MC-1)* 11
4 or N 32, *(MC-1)* 11
5 or O 50 , *(MC-1)* 11
6 or P 72, *(MC-1)* 11
7 or Q 98, *(MC-1)* 11
104 known elements; 89 of them occur naturally and the rest are manmade, *(MC-1)* 4